Arc Hydro Geoprocessing Tools -Tutorial

Version 2.0 – October 2011

ESRI 380 New York St., Redlands, CA 92373-8100, USA • TEL 909-793-2853 • FAX 909-793-5953 • E-MAIL info@esri.com • WEB www.esri.com

Copyright © 2011 Esri All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America.

The information contained in this document is the exclusive property of Esri. This work is protected under United States copyright law and other international copyright treaties and conventions. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system, except as expressly permitted in writing by Esri. All requests should be sent to Attention: Contracts Manager, Esri, 380 New York Street, Redlands, CA 92373-8100, USA.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

Table of Contents

Introduction	5
Objective	5
Loading Arc Hydro Tools Toolbox	5
Accessing the Arc Hydro Geoprocessing Tools Help	7
Arc Hydro Tools Configuration	9
Arc Hydro Setup	10
1. Set Target Locations	10
2. Set Batch Target Locations	13
3. Standard Geoprocessing Configuration	15
Terrain Preprocessing	16
1. Level DEM	17
2. DEM Reconditioning	22
3. Assign Stream Slope	25
4. Burn Stream Slope	27
5. Build Walls	28
6. Sink Prescreening	29
7. Sink Evaluation	29
8. Sink Selection	31
9. Fill Sinks	32
10. Flow Direction	33
11. Flow Direction with Sinks	34
12. Flow Accumulation	35
13. Stream Definition	36
14. Stream Segmentation	37
15. Flow Direction with Streams	37
16. Combine Stream Link and Sink Link	39
17. Catchment Grid Delineation	40
18. Catchment Polygon Processing	40
19. Drainage Line Processing	40
20. Adjoint Catchment Processing	42
21. Drainage Point Processing	42
22. Slope	43
23. Depression Evaluation	45
24. Adjust Flow Direction in Lakes	46
Terrain Preprocessing Workflows	40
1. Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing	47
2. Batch Processing	47 52
3. How to create your own model	55
•	53 62
4. How to run your own model in batch mode Network Tools	66 66
 Hydro Network Generation Set Flow Direction 	66 72
3. Store Flow Direction	73
4. Node Link Schema Generation	75
	76
Attribute Tools	78
1. Assign HydroID	79

2. Assign UniqueID	80
3. Generate From/To Node for Lines	81
4. Find Next Downstream Line	83
5. Find Next Downstream Junction	85
6. Calculate Length Downstream for Edges	86
7. Calculate Length Downstream for Junctions	87
8. Store Area Outlets by Drainage Point Proximity	88
9. Store Area Outlets by Junction Intersect	88
10. Store Area Outlets by Next Downstream Area	88
11. Compute Global Parameters	89
Watershed Processing	97
1. Drainage Area Centroid	97
2. Longest Flow Path	99
3. Construct 3D Line	100
4. Smooth 3D Line	101
5. Flow Path Parameters from 2D Line	102
6. Flow Path Parameters from 3D Line	104
7. Batch Watershed Delineation	105
8. Interactive Delineation	109
9. Batch Subwatershed Delineation	113
10. Batch Watershed Delineation for Polygons	116
11. Delineate from Multiple Inlets and Outlets	118
12. Batch Global Watershed Delineation	121
1. Create Thiessen Polygons	127
2. Intersect Areas	128
3. Weighted Averages	130
4. Download Time Series Data	131
5. Export Data Cart to XML	131
6. Point TSValue to 3D Line	131
7. Update TSValue on Points	132
8. Convert 3D Line to Raster	132
9. Spatial Reference frin Raster	132
Terrain Morphology	133
Drainage Boundary Processing Toolset	135
1. Drainage Area Characterization	135
2. Drainage Boundary Definition	136
3. Drainage Boundary Direction	139
4. Cross Section Direction	142
5. Elevation-Width-Area Characterization	143
6. Station-Elevation Characterization	145
7. Drainage Boundary Smoothing	147
8. Drainage Connectivity Characterization	148
AH Connectivity Refinement Toolset	151
1. Sink Identification by HEP	151
2. Connect HydroJunctions	152
3. Connect Control Structure Junctions	160
4. Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema	164
5. Flip Preferential Path	169
6. Add Point Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link	173
7. Update Preferential Node Link Schema	175
8. Add Linear Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link	178

9. Set Flow Direction Using Preferential Link	181
Grouping Toolset	183
1. Select Upstream Catchments using Preferential Node Link	183
2. Group Selected Catchment	186
3. Ungroup Selected Catchments	188
4. Generate Group Basin	190
5. Generate Group Junction	193
6. Generate Group Link	195
H&H Modeling	198
Time of Concentration Toolset	198
1. Generate TR55 Zone Grid	199
2. Compute Time of Concentration	200
3. Compute Travel Time for Preferential Link	202
4. Compute Time of Concentration for Group Basin	204
Green and Ampt Toolset	208
1. Accumulate Incremental TimeSeries	208
2. Create Green and Ampt Parameter Rasters	210
3. Compute Green and Ampt Parameters	213
4. Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall	214
5. Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Parameters	219
6. Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Rainfall Excess	221
Map to Map Toolset	223
1. Export to DSS	223
2. Import from DSS	224
3. Run HMS	225
4. Run RAS	225
5. SDF to XML	226
6. Update RAS Flow	226
GeoICPR Toolset	228
1. Generate ICPR Node	228
2. Generate ICPR Link	233
3. Generate ICPR Basin	235
4. Export to ICPR	240
5. Import from ICPR	240
GIS Data Exchange	241
XML Exchange Toolset	241
1. Export GIS Data to XML	241
2. Import from XML	244
3. Transform XML	245
Excel Exchange Toolset	245
1. Export Tools Parameters	245
2. Map to Excel	246
3. Excel to Map	249

Introduction

The purpose of this tutorial is to illustrate, step-by-step, how to access and use the Arc Hydro Geoprocessing (GP) tools that are installed by the standard Arc Hydro setup. The installation process is described in the document "Arc Hydro Tools 2.0 – Tutorial.pdf". This document is targeted to an experienced water resources ArcGIS user who wants to learn how to use the new geoprocessing tools in Arc Hydro.

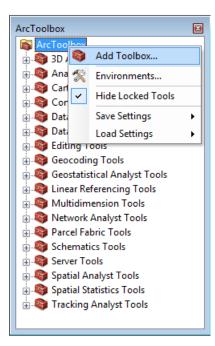
Objective

In this tutorial, the user will perform drainage analysis on a terrain model using the geoprocessing tools instead of the standard Arc Hydro tools. The utility of the Arc Hydro geoprocessing tools is demonstrated by building models allowing running workflows in batch mode.

Loading Arc Hydro Tools Toolbox

The Arc Hydro Tools toolbox is installed in the ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes directory as Arc Hydro Tools.tbx. Refer to the document Arc Hydro Tools 2.0 – Tutorial.pdf for detailed information on how to install the Arc Hydro tools if they are not already installed. The toolbox can be added in the ArcToolbox window that is available either in ArcMap or ArcCatalog in not already there.

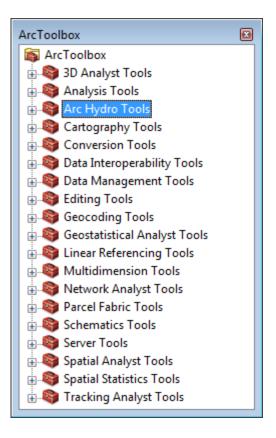
- Open a new map document in ArcMap or open ArcCatalog.
- Click the ArcToolbox window tool () on the Standard toolbar to open the ArcToolbox window if it is not visible.
- If the Arc Hydro Tools toolbox is not visible, add it by following the steps below: • Right-click ArcToolbox and select Add Toolbox
 - Right-click ArcToolbox and select Add Toolbox.



 Browse to the ArcGIS toolboxes location (e.g. Toolboxes\System Toolboxes), select Arc Hydro Tools and click Open.

Add Toolbox	
Look in: 🛐 System Toolboxes	- 🔁 🏠 🕼 🏥 - 🖴 🖆 🗳
💐 3D Analyst Tools.tbx	🚳 Geostatistical Analyst Tools.tbx 🛭 🎯 Tracking Analy
🚳 Analysis Tools.tbx	🚳 Linear Referencing Tools.tbx
Arc Hydro Tools.tbx	🚳 Multidimension Tools.tbx
Cartography Tools.tbx	Network Analyst Tools.tbx
Conversion Tools.tbx	🚳 Parcel Fabric Tools.tbx
🚳 Data Interoperability Tools.tbx	🚳 Schematics Tools.tbx
🚳 Data Management Tools.tbx	💱 Server Tools.tbx
Seliting Tools.tbx	🚳 Spatial Analyst Tools.tbx
Seocoding Tools.tbx	😂 Spatial Statistics Tools.tbx
	4
Name: Arc Hydro Tools.tbx	Open
Show of type: Toolboxes	▼ Cancel

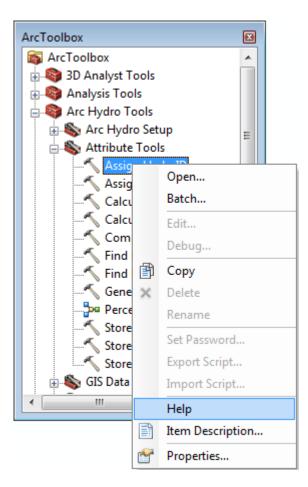
The Arc Hydro Tools toolbox is added to the list of available toolboxes.



Accessing the Arc Hydro Geoprocessing Tools Help

The online help for the Arc Hydro Geoprocessing tools is accessed in the same way as the standard ArcGIS Geoprocessing tools:

• By right-clicking the tool/model of interest and selecting Help in the context menu.



• By opening the tool user interface and clicking the Tool Help button at the bottom of the right panel.

K Adjoint Catchment Processing	
Click error and warning icons for more information	Adjoint Catchment Processing
Input Drainage Line	Generates the aggregated upstream catchments
S Input Catchment Catchment	from the "Catchment" feature class. For each catchment that is not a head catchment, a polygon
Output Adjoint Catchment	representing the whole upstream area draining to its inlet point is constructed and stored in a feature
C: \Users\chri3244\Documents\ArcGIS\Default.gdb\Layers\AdjointCatchment	class that has an "Adjoint Catchment" tag. This feature class is used to speed up the point delineation process.
OK Cancel Environments	Tool Help

The first page accessed after clicking on Tool Help describes the parameters used by the tool. The link Learn more about how... on the page allows accessing a page describing in more details what the tool does.

Arc Hydro Tools Configuration

The standard Arc Hydro tools available in the Arc Hydro toolbar read their configuration from a XML file associated to the map document. This configuration is loaded from the template ArcHydroTools.xml configuration file stored in the ArcHydro\bin folder.

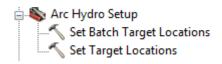
Note

The raster and vector locations are not explicitly set in a new unsaved map document and in ArcCatalog. The geoprocessing tools will use in that case the standard Current Workspace for both those locations. This workspace may be set by right-clicking the ArcToolbox node in the ArcToolbox window and selecting Environments...

🛠 Environment Settings	
* Workspace	Current Workspace
C:\Users\chri3244\Documents\ArcGIS\Default.gdb	Specify the workspace from which inputs are taken
Scratch Workspace	and into which outputs are placed.
C:\Users\chri3244\Documents\ArcGIS\Default.gdb	
➤ Output Coordinates	
* Processing Extent	
× XY Resolution and Tolerance	
OK Cancel << Hide Help	Tool Help

Arc Hydro Setup

This section describes how to setup non default Arc Hydro target locations used by the Arc Hydro tools. By default, the tools will create the default target vector and raster locations if they do not already exist and the user will not need to use this toolset.



1. Set Target Locations

This tool allows setting the target vector and raster locations in the XML in ArcMap as well as creating these workspaces if they do not already exist in both ArcMap and ArcCatalog.

- The vector location may be set to a personal (existing or not) geodatabase or to a remote geodatabase. The tool will generate the unique ID table in that database if they do not already exist.
- The raster location must be set to a file geodatabase (existing or not) or to a directory.

In ArcMap, the tool can work with multiple applications (Arc Hydro, GeoHMS, etc.). The Application Name input allows specifying the application to update ("HydroConfig" for Arc Hydro).

- Double click Arc Hydro Setup > Set Target Locations.
- Select HydroConfig as Application Name and select the active dataframe name (e.g. "Layers") as input Map Name.
- Specify the Raster Location Workspace and the Vector Location Workspace. Click OK.

Not Set Target Locations			x
Application Name HydroConfig Input Map Name Layers Input Raster Location Workspace C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\gptools.mdb	~	Set Target Locations Creates the specified raster and target vector locations and set them as default locations for the Arc Hydro tools in ArcMap by editing the active configuration loaded in memory.	^
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

The tool creates the target locations if they do not already exist. When run from ArcMap, the tool updates as well the Arc Hydro configuration loaded in memory with these locations. The RasterLocation and VectorLocation have been set to the specified values under a new MapView associated to the active dataframe (Layers).

You can visualize the edits to the configuration in the XML loaded in memory in the map.

• Add the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar in the map if not already there and select ApUtilities > XML Manager... and navigate to the node HydroConfig\MapViews\MpView(Layers)\RasterLocation where Layers is the name

of the active dataframe in the map document. Right-click the RasterLocation node and select EditText to view the location set as target for the raster.

XMLViewer - ApUtilities		
		GetNode
Name=RasterLocation, NodeType XPath=FrameworkConfig/HydroC RasterLocation has no attributes. InnerText=C:\Tutorial\Results\GF ChildNodes=1 XMLLength=60:27	onfig/MapViews/MapView/ProgParams/Ras	sterLocation
FrameworkConfig(Framework	Config)	
. DefaultConfig	coning)	
HydroConfig (HydroConfi	g)	
	lateView)	
ProgParams		
i LayerKeys ⊡ MapViews		
in Map Views)	
ProgParams	, ,	
🗄 - Debug		_
i Reload		=
	or	
	Type (Location Type)	
⊟- RasterLo	cation	
🔮 Edit		
NodeName:	Value:	
RasterLocation	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools	
Apply to child nodes	OK Cance	el
- ApFunct	ons (ApFunctions)	+
<u> </u>		,
		.::

• Click Cancel in the Edit window and close the XMLViewer by clicking on the cross in the top right corner.

You can also view the currently set locations by using the Set Target Locations function on the Arc Hydro tools toolbar.

• Select ApUtilities > Set Target Locations...,Select the HydroConfig node that is associated to the Arc Hydro tools abd click OK.

Select a Node to set target location.	
Ap UtilitiesConfig DefaultConfig	
HydroConfig	
	OK Cancel

The Raster and Vector Data locations currently set are displayed.

🔮 Set target loca	ations for HydroConfig	—
Application	Map Level Map Name: Layers	•
Raster Data:	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools	(
Vector Data:	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\gptools.mdb	≥
	OK Help Cancel	

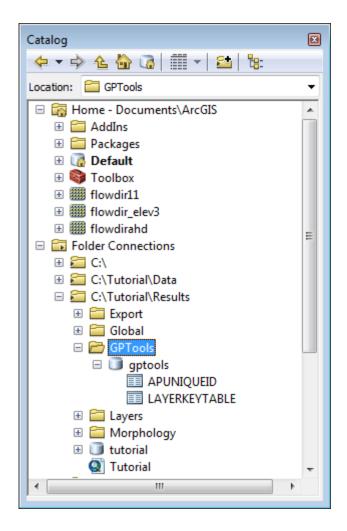
• Click Cancel to close the window.

The Set Target Locations create the specified directory and geodatabase if they do not exist as well as the unique ids tables in the vector location (APUNIQUEID and LAYERKEYTABLE). These tables are used by the tools to populate the HydroID field.

• Add the Catalog window in ArcMap by selecting Windows > Catalog in the Main menu and browse to your specified target raster and vector location.

The GPTools directory and the gptools.mdb geodatabase have been created by the tool. The tool also created the unique ids table in the new geodatabase specified as target vector location.

• Delete the geodatabase gptools.mdb by right-clicking it in the Catalog window and selecting Delete. Confirm the deletion.



2. Set Batch Target Locations

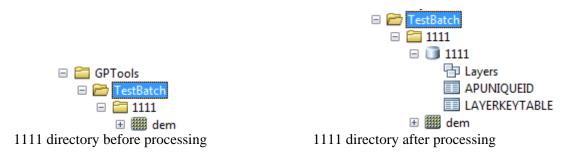
The Set Batch Target Locations tool allows creating the target vector location if it does not already exist as well as setting up and switching to the corresponding Arc Hydro configuration. The tool takes as input a DEM (grid) that is used to determine the raster location as well as the projection of the feature dataset created within the vector location.

You are going to use the data provided for the global tools to test this tool.

- Create a new directory called TestBatch and create the subdirectory 1111. Copy the grid DataGP\Global\1111\dem into that subdirectory.
- Double-click **Arc Hydro Setup > Set Batch Target Locations**.

Set Batch Target Locations	
Input DEM	Set Batch Target Locations
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TestBatch\1111\dem	Creates the target vector and raster locations based on the location and spatial reference of the input raster dataset and set these locations as default locations in ArcMap.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool sets the raster location to the directory containing the input DEM and creates the target vector geodatabase in that directory as well as the feature dataset "Layers". The geodatabase has the same name as the directory in which the DEM is located. The tool will update the target location and vector location in the Arc Hydro configuration loaded in memory in ArcMap so that these locations are used by default when running the Arc Hydro tools.



The active environment is set to the newly created Arc Hydro configuration.

🔮 Set target loca	ations for HydroConfig
Application	Map Level Map Name: Layers
Raster Data:	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TestBatch\1111
Vector Data:	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TestBatch\1111\1111.gdb
	OK Help Cancel

• Reset the configuration to its default by using the function ApUtilities > Additional Utilities > Reset Target Locations on the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar, selecting the HydroConfig node and clicking OK.

3. Standard Geoprocessing Configuration

In addition to the specific Arc Hydro configuration, the standard Geoprocessing configuration also applies (e.g. overwrite outputs, add output to map, etc.) and can be set in ArcMap or ArcCatalog by using Geoprocessing > Geoprocessing Options and switching to the Geoprocessing tab. Note that the Display/Temporary data parameters apply to ArcMap only.

- In your map document, select Geoprocessing > Geoprocessing Options...
- Uncheck "Overwrite the outputs of geoprocessing operations".
- Check "Add results of geoprocessing operations to the display".
- Uncheck "Results are temporary by default" so that the data created by the tools does not get deleted and click OK.

Geoprocessing Options	
General Overwrite the outputs of geoprocessing operations Uog geoprocessing operations to a log file Background Processing Enable Notification Appear for how long (seconds) Script Tool Editor/Debugger Editor:	Geoprocessing Options
Debugger:	Debugger: ModelBuilder When connecting elements, display valid parameters when more than one is available. Results Management Keep results younger than: 2 Weeks
Display / Temporary Data Image: Constraint of the display Image: Constraint of the display	OK Cancel

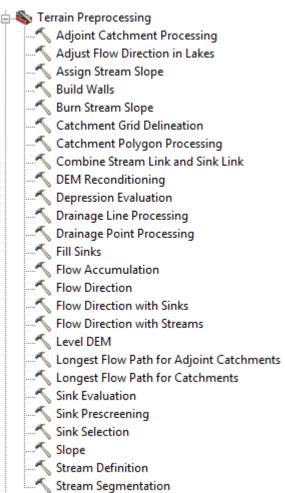
Geoprocessing options in ArcMap (10)

• Close the map without saving.

Geoprocessing options in ArcCatalog (10)

Terrain Preprocessing

This section walks you through the Terrain Preprocessing tools in the geoprocessing environment. Note that each tool has a corresponding function in the standard Arc Hydro tools toolbar. If you are already familiar with the Arc Hydro tools, and comfortable with the ArcGIS geoprocessing tools, you may want to read through the first 2 tools (Level DEM and DEM Reconditioning) as an example of the Arc Hydro implementation of the geoprocessing tools and then jump to the next section, Terrain Preprocessing Workflows, to learn more on how building models and performing batch processing with the tools.



Note

The preprocessing steps to use when preprocessing a terrain depend on the type of the terrain (dendritic, deranged, i.e. with sinks, combined) and on the type of analysis you want to perform. The objective of the section below is to step through all the tools, not to describe possible workflows. If you are interested in learning more about the terrain preprocessing workflows, refer to the document "Comprehensive terrain preprocessing using Arc Hydro tools".

You can use the Tutorial data from the DataGP\SanMarcos directory.

1. Level DEM

This tool levels the input Raw DEM by filling the cells covered by each lake up to the Fill Elevation value defined for that lake polygon.

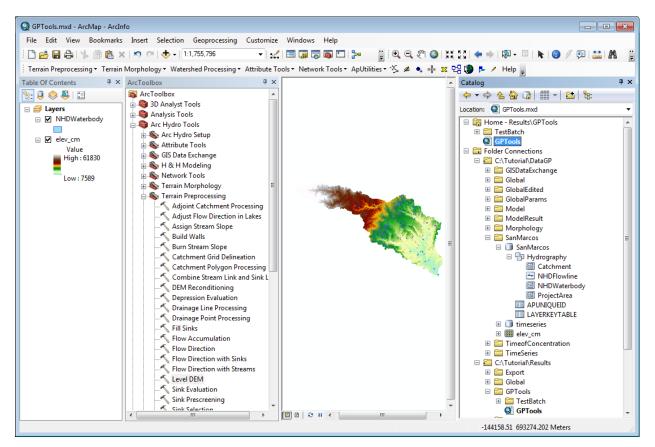
• Open a new map document.

Warning

Do not open from an existing map document or your configuration will not be reset in the new map but copied from the old map document.

- Add the elevation grid \DataGP\SanMarcos\elev_cm and the Lakes feature class DataGP\SanMarcos\SanMarcos.gdb\Hydrography\NHDWaterbody into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.
- Save the map as GPTools.mxd under Results\GPTools for example.

The Home folder is now set to the Result\GPTools directory where the map was saved.



• Double-click Terrain **Preprocessing > Level DEM**.

🔨 Level DEM	
Click error and warning icons for more information	Level DEM
🐼 Input Raw DEM	
RawDEM 🗾 🔁	Levels the DEM by filling the Lake polygons up to their FillElev value.
🐼 Input Lake Polygon	polygons up to their Philelev value.
Lake 🗾 🚰	
Output Level DEM	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\LevelDEM	
 Fill Elevation Field (optional) 	
	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The default name of the input Raw DEM is read from the configuration associated to the map document. It corresponds to the default name associated to the RawDEM tag read from the configuration.

The default name of the input Lake Polygon is name associated to the Lake tag read from the configuration.

The default name of the output Level DEM is constructed by appending to the target raster location the name of the active dataframe as well as the name associated to the LevelDEM tag in the configuration.

The red crosses next to the inputs indicate that these inputs do not exist. You have the option to browse to locate each input or to use the dropdown list to select one of the available input in the map. Only the type of data that may be used as input may be selected in the dropdown list (i.e. raster for Raw DEM, polygon layer for Lake Polygon).

- Select the DEM (elev_cm_ and Lake Polygon (NHDWaterbody) that you have added to the map. Keep the default output name.
- If the Lake Polygon layer contains a field storing the Fill Elevation for each lake, select this field as Fill Elevation Field. If this field is not provided, leave the parameter blank. You need to first select one of the existing fields and then delete it to validate the blank field. Selecting a blank field will trigger the recomputation of the Fill Elevation value that will be stored in the LevelElev field. Click OK.

🔨 Level DEM	
Input Raw DEM elev_cm Input Lake Polygon NHDWaterbody Output Level DEM C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\LevelDEM Fill Elevation Field (optional)	
OK Cancel Environments << H	tide Help Tool Help

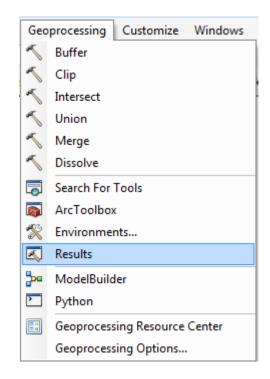
The tool processes the input DEM and displays the processing steps in the geoprocessing is not performed in background mode.

Level DEM	×
Completed	
<< Det	ails
Close this dialog when completed successfully	
Executing: LevelDEM elev cm NHDWaterbody C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\LevelDEM #	*
Start Time: Mon Jul 18 10:41:26 2011	
Computing zone grid for lakes Computing fill elevation for lakes	
Assigning Level Elevation for the lakes	
Computing Level DEM	
Succeeded at Mon Jul 18 10:41:36 2011 (Elapsed Time: 10.00 seconds)	
	-
,	

The tool performs the Level DEM step and adds the resulting LevelDEM to the map.

You can visualize the messages displayed when running the tools or intermediate geoprocessing tools called by the tools in the geoprocessing Results window.

• Select Geoprocessing > Results window to open the Results window.



You can right-click the tool you just run and reopen it or rerun it.

Results		
Current Session	Open	
Inputs Inputs	Copy Remove Rename Copy As Python Snippet Delete	ults\GPTools\Layers\LevelDEM #
	Re Run	
	10:41:36 2011 (Elapsed Time: 10.00 s	econds)

You can visualize the input/output parameters and copy their location or add them to the map.

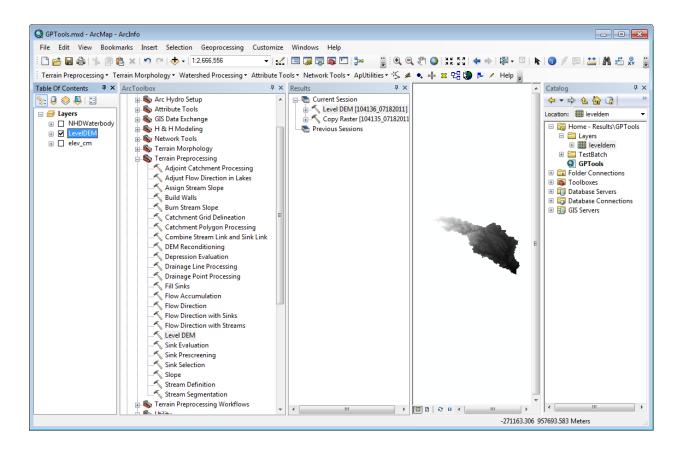
Results	×
Current Session Current Session Curren	

You can also display the messages generated by the tools by right-clicking the Messages node and selecting View...

🗈 Messages 💦 😜 🛃	×
Executing: LevelDEM elev_cm NHDWaterbody C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools	*
\Layers\LevelDEM #	
Start Time: Mon Jul 18 10:41:26 2011	
Computing zone grid for lakes	
Computing fill elevation for lakes	
Assigning Level Elevation for the lakes	
Computing Level DEM	
Succeeded at Mon Jul 18 10:41:36 2011 (Elapsed Time: 10.00 seconds)	
	-

• Close the Message window.

The ouput leveldem grid has been created in the output target raster location. The picture below shows the new grid in the Table of Contents, in the map and in the Catalog window. It also shows the ArcToolbox windows containing the Arc Hydro geoprocessing tools and the geoprocessing Results window.



2. DEM Reconditioning

This tool performs the DEM Reconditioning step – it requires as input a DEM and stream feature class, as well as 4 parameters, and generates as output an AgreeDEM grid.

- Add the stream feature class DataGP\SanMarcos.gdb\Hydrography\NHDFlowline into the map.
- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > DEM Reconditioning**.

The default name of the input Raw DEM is set to the grid that was tagged as RawDEM when running the function Level DEM.

The default name of the input AGREE Stream is the name associated to the AgreeStream tag read from the configuration.

The default name of the output AGREE DEM is constructed by appending to the raster location the name of the active dataframe as well as the name associated to the AgreeDEM tag in the configuration.

The red cross next to the input indicates that this input does not exist. You have the option to browse to locate the input or to use the dropdown list to select one of the available input in the map. Only the type of data that may be used as input may be selected in the dropdown list (i.e. raster for Raw DEM, line layer for AGREE Stream).

Note: The seconditioning the second s	
Click error and warning icons for more information	DEM Reconditioning
Input Raw DEM	
elev_cm 💌 🖻	Modifies Digital Elevation Models
🚫 Input AGREE Stream	(DEMs) by imposing linear features onto them (burning/fencing). This
AgreeStream 🖻	function is an implementation of the
Number of Cells for Stream Buffer	AGREE method developed by Ferdi
5	- The weger at the oniversity of rexus
Smooth Drop in Z Units	at Austin in 1997.
Sharp Drop in Z Units	
1000	0
Output AGREE DEM	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Layers \AgreeDEM	<u></u>
Raise Negative Values (optional)	
OK Cancel Environments	Help Tool Help

• Select LevelDEM instead of elev_cm as input RawDEM and NHDFlowline as input AGREE Stream.

The option to Raise Negative Value allows ensuring that the output DEM only contains positive value. It used to be a requirement for the flow direction function but is not the case anymore – the flow direction function also works with DEMs having negative elevation values.

• Uncheck "Raise Negative Values" and Click OK.

N DEM Reconditioning	
Input Raw DEM	DEM Reconditioning
LevelDEM 💌 🖻	
Input AGREE Stream	Modifies Digital Elevation Models
NHDFlowline 💌 🖻	(DEMs) by imposing linear features
Number of Cells for Stream Buffer	onto them (burning/fencing). This function is an implementation of the
5	AGREE method developed by Ferdi
Smooth Drop in Z Units	Hellweger at the University of Texas
10	at Austin in 1997.
Sharp Drop in Z Units 1000	
Output AGREE DEM	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\AgreeDEM	
Raise Negative Values (optional)	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool performs the DEM Reconditioning step and adds the resulting AgreeDEM to the map.

• Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > DEM Reconditioning** again.

The default output still uses the default setting. The red cross indicates that the output already exists and cannot be overwritten because of the geoprocessing setting of not allowing overwriting output.

Note: Market Constraining	
Click error and warning icons for more information	Output AGREE DEM
Input Raw DEM	
LevelDEM 💌 🖻	Output DEM with streams burnt in
Input AGREE Stream	
NHDFlowline 🗾 🖻	
Number of Cells for Stream Buffer	
5	
Smooth Drop in Z Units 10	
Sharp Drop in Z Units	
1000	
Output AGREE DEM	
Output AGREE DEM: Dataset C:\Tutorial\Results\ GPTools\Layers\AgreeDEM already exists.	
Click for more detailed information.	- -
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

Note

If the geoprocessing setting was set to "allow overwrite", then there would be a yellow warning triangle instead of a red cross indicating that the output already exists but may be overwritten.

1	Output AGREE DEM	_
	C+\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Lavers\AgreeDEM Output AGREE DEM: Dataset C:\Tutorial\Results\ GPTools\Layers\AgreeDEM already exists. Click for more detailed information.	

- Modify the name of the output to AgreeDEM1 and click OK to generate the new Agree DEM.
- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > DEM Reconditioning** again.

The default output name read from the configuration has been updated to the last value used for the output tag.

K DEM Reconditioning	_ • • ×
Click error and warning icons for more information	DEM Reconditioning
Input Raw DEM	Modifies Digital Elevation Models
LevelDEM Input AGREE Stream	(DEMs) by imposing linear features
NHDFlowline 🗹 🖻	onto them (burning/fencing). This function is an implementation of the
Number of Cells for Stream Buffer 5	AGREE method developed by Ferdi Hellweger at the University of Texas
Smooth Drop in Z Units	at Austin in 1997.
10 Sharp Drop in Z Units	
1000 Coutput AGREE DEM	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\AgreeDEM1	
Raise Negative Values (optional)	
	v
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Click Cancel to close the form.

3. Assign Stream Slope

This tool allows assigning From and To Elevations to an input stream (line) feature class. The stream feature class must contain the fields FROM_NODE and TO_NODE that may be populated using the Generate From/To Node for Lines tool from the Attribute Tools toolset.

• Click Attribute Tools > Generate From/To Node for Lines and select NHDFlowline as Input Line. Click OK.

🔨 Generate From/To Node for Lines	
Input Line	Generate From/To Node for fines
E	Updates the FROM_NODE and TO_NODE fields for each line feature in the "Line" feature class.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool creates the fields From_Node and To_Node in the attributes table of NHDFlowline.

Tab	le						X	
°	- ₽	- 🔓 🌄 🖂	⊕ ×					
NHDFlowline								
	FCODE	SHAPE_LENG	ENABLED	Shape_Length	FROM_NODE *	TO_NODE *	-	
F	46003	0.046141	Т	4944.709467	1	2		
	46003	0.044625	Т	4509.518122	3	2		
	46003	0.008707	Т	952.129968	4	5	1	
	46003	0.020109	Т	2141.938739	6	7	1	
П	46003	0.018375	Т	1880.273971	8	9	Ŧ	
٠						•		
I → → I ■ ■ (0 out of 557 Selected)								
Nł	HDFlowlin	ne						

• Click Terrain Preprocessing > Assign Stream Slope.

🔨 Assign Stream Slope	_ • •
Input Stream	Assign Stream Slope
High number for starting elevation 10000	Assigns relative elevations to the from/to nodes of input Stream
Elevation drop value 10	features.
	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The parameter "High number for starting elevation" is an arbitrary number that will be used as highest elevation – elevations along the feature will be decremented by the "elevation drop value".

• Keep the defaults and click OK to run the tool.

The tool populates the fields FromElev and ToElev in the input stream feature class.

Tab									X
•] - 뭡 ·	- 🏪 🌄 🛛	÷ ×						
NH	IDFlowlin	e							×
\Box	FCODE	SHAPE_LENG	ENABLED	Shape_Length	FROM_NODE *	TO_NODE *	FromElev	ToElev	-
F	46003	0.046141	Т	4944.709467	1	2	10000	9990	
	46003	0.044625	Т	4509.518122	3	2	10000	9990	
	46003	0.008707	Т	952.129968	4	5	10000	9990	
	46003	0.020109	Т	2141.938739	6	7	10000	9990	
П	46003	0.018375	Т	1880.273971	8	9	10000	9990	Ŧ
.₹								•	
I → → I = (0 out of 557 Selected)									
N	HDFlowlir	ne							

4. Burn Stream Slope

This tool allows burning in a stream slope to force the water to flow in the digitized direction within the streams. The input steam feature must have the fields FromElev and ToElev populated.

- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Burn Stream Slope.
- Select as input DEM the DEM onto which you want to enforce the stream slope (e.g. AgreeDEM) and as input Stream a line feature class with populated FromElev and ToElev fields (e.g. NHDFlowline). Click OK.

🔨 Burn Stream Slope	- • •
Input DEM AgreeDEM Input Stream NHDFlowline Output Stream Sloped DEM	Burn Stream Slope Burns streams in input DEM with slopes built based on FromElev and ToElev values in the input Stream feature class.
C: \Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\StrSlpDEM	Ţ
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool burns in the stream slope and generates an output "Stream Sloped DEM". The output EditPoints feature class is an intermediate layer used in the burn in process.

5. Build Walls

This tool allows building walls onto an input DEM. Two types of walls may be created:

- Outer walls based on an input polygon feature class (Outer Wall Polygon)
- Inner walls based on an input polygon, line or point feature class (Inner Wall Feature)

Both types may be built at the same time, but at least one must be selected.

In addition, a Breach Line feature class may be provided as input, to ensure that they are "breaches" in the walls allowing the water to flow out.

- Add DataGP\SanMarcos\SanMarcos.gdb\Hydrography\ProjectArea into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.
- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Build Walls.

🔨 Build Walls	
Input DEM	Build Walls
StrSlpDEM 🗾 🖻	
Inner Wall Height (DEM Z-Unit)	Creates a DEM grid with external
500	and/or internal walls burnt in, except
Inner Wall Buffer (Number of Cells)	at the location of the breachlines.
0	
Breachline Buffer (Number of Cells)	Learn more about how Build Walls
Output Walled DEM	(Arc Hydro) works.
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\WalledDEM	
Input Outer Wall Polygon (optional)	
ProjectArea 🗾 🖻	
Input Inner Wall Feature (optional)	
ProjectArea 🗾 🖻	
Input Breach Line (optional)	
NHDFlowline 🗾 🔂	
*	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

- Select as input DEM the elevation grid onto which you want to enforce walls slope (e.g. StrSlpDEM) and click OK.
- Enter the Inner Wall Height. The Outer Wall Height is twice this height.
- Enter a buffer (number of cells) for the Inner Walls. Default to 0, i.e. no buffer.
- Enter a buffer for the Breach Line. Default to 0, i.e. no buffer.
- Specify the name of the output Walled DEM.
- Select the Outer Wall Polygon layer (optional, e.g. ProjectArea) to ensure that the outer boundary of the Catchment feature class matches a specific boundary.
- Select the Inner Wall Feature class (optional, e.g. ProjectArea) to ensure internal watersheds/catchments boundary match specific input data.
- Select a Breach Line feature class (optional, e.g. NHDFlowline) that contains features crossing the walls so that the water can flow out.
- Click OK.

Upon successful completion of the process, the "WalledDEM" layer is added to the map.

6. Sink Prescreening

This tool allows prescreening potentials sinks by filling the pits having a drainage area that is smaller than the specified area threshold and should not be considered as sinks. Prescreening will speed up the Sink Evaluation because fewer potential sinks will need to be processed.

- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Sink Prescreening.
- Select as input Raw DEM the elevation grid (e.g. StrSlpDEM) you want to prescreen for sinks by filling the potential sinks having a drainage area smaller than the specified threshold. Enter a threshold value and specify the names of the output Prefilled DEM and Sink Grid and click OK.

🔨 Sink Prescreening	- • ×
Input Raw DEM StrSIpDEM Minimum drainage area for potential sinks 1000000	Sink Prescreening Prescreens the potential sinks in the input Raw DEM by filling the pits
Output PreFilled DEM C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Layers \PreFillDEM Output Sink Grid C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Layers \Sink	having a drainage area that is smaller than the specified threshold area. This tool is useful to improve performance when running the Sink Evaluation tool by removing up front the pits that should not be considered as potential sinks.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output Prefilled DEM where all sinks having a drainage area smaller than the specified threshold have been filled. It also creates the Sink Grid containing all the remaining sinks in the Prefilled DEM.

7. Sink Evaluation

This tool allows characterizing the sinks and depressions to provide more selection criteria to decide whether to use the sinks in the analysis.

Note

You may see a warning message when running the tool indicating that the spatial reference of the input grid does not have a z unit specified and that the tool assumes that the z unit is the same as the linear unit (Spatial reference does not have z unit. Assuming ZUnit is the same as linear unit and zfactor = 1).

If the elevations are not in the linear unit of the grid, you need to make sure the projection file associated to the grid is correct. This file is named prj.adf is located in the grid directory.

• Set Zunits to 100 in the projection file of the PreFillDem if you are using the tutorial data to indicate that the elevations are in centimeters. Zunits represents the number of elevation unit in one meter (100 centimeters in 1 meter).

```
Projection
              ALBERS
Datum
              NAD83
Spheroid
              GRS80
Units
              METERS
Zunits
              100.0
Xshift
              0.0
Yshift
              0.0
Parameters
  29 30 0.0 /* 1st standard parallel
       0.0 /* 2nd standard parallel
  45 30
 -96 0 0.0 /* central meridian
  23
      0 0.0 /* latitude of projection's origin
0.0 /* false easting (meters)
0.0 /* false northing (meters)
```

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Sink Evaluation**.
- Select as input DEM the Prefilled DEM created by the tool Sink Prescreening. Specify the name of the output Sink Polygon and Sink Drainage Area feature classes and click OK.

🀔 Sink Evaluation			٢.
Input DEM	^	Sink Evaluation	*
PreFillDEM 💌 🖻			
Output Sink Polygon		Generates and characterizes the Sink	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\SinkPoly		Polygon and Sink Drainage Area feature classes for the input DEM.	
Output Sink Drainage Area		leature classes for the input DEM.	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\SinkDA			
	Ŧ		Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments << Hide He	p	Tool Help	

The tool generates the Sink Polygon and Sink Drainage Area feature classes, and characterizes these features by populating area, depth, etc. so that the user can decide which sinks to retain for the analysis.

🗄 • 唱 • 唱 🚱 🛛 🚳 🛪												
	Poly											
Т	Shape_Area	HydroID	GridID *	DrainID	IsSink	FillDepth	FillArea	FillVolume	BottomElev	FillElev	DrainArea	1
•	900	356	1	1	0	0.29	2700	441	463.2	463.49	2025900	10
I	900	357	2	2	0	0.11	2700	153	420.71	420.82	2700000	11
Ι	900	358	3	3	0	0.57	2700	954	407.95	408.52	1134000	1
T	900	359	4	4	0	0.28	2700	360	541.08	541.36	1466100	1
T	900	360	5	5	0	0.97	3600	1404	510.96	511.93	3231900	1
I ← ← 1 → → I I = ■ (0 out of 355 Selected)												
	kPoly				cereary							

8. Sink Selection

This tool allows selecting sinks based on various criteria. The sinks meeting the criteria will have their field IsSink populated with 1.

- Open the Attributes table of SinkPoly and look at the values of the attributes. •
- ٠ Sink Selection Input Deranged Polygon Sink Selection B SinkPoly -Sets the field IsSink to 1 for the Minimum Depth (optional) features in the Deranged Polygon 0 layer that meet the specified criteria Minimum Area (optional) to be considered as sinks. 0 Minimum Volume (optional) 0 Minimum Drainage Area (optional) 5000000 Overwrite Selection (optional) OVERWRITE YES •
- Double-click Terrain **Preprocessing > Sink Selection**.

Select as input Deranged Polygon the SinkPoly feature class generated by the Sink ٠ Evaluation tool. Specify one or several selection criteria for the input polygons to be populated with IsSink=1, i.e. to be considered as real sinks in the following analyses.

Tool Help

<< Hide Help

Select whether to overwrite the existing records having IsSink set to 1 and click OK. •

The tool populates the field IsSink with 1 for the polygons meeting the specified criteria.

Environments...

OK

Cancel

	• ª• ¶	S. T. An	~								
inkPoly Shape_Area HydrolD GridID* DrainID IsSink FillDepth FillArea FillVolume BottomElev FillElev DrainArea A											
Γ	42300	379	24	24	1	0.07	78300	4716	164.37	164.44	6653700
Γ	900	380	25	25	0	0.04	2700	72	171.61	171.65	1339200
1	900	381	26	26	0	4.45	24300	43137	200.95	205.4	2507400
Γ	3600	382	27	27	1	0.15	46800	4347	185.69	185.84	5049900
Γ	2700	383	28	28	0	0.05	4500	180	176.25	176.3	1188900
I ← ↓ 1 ← ▶ I □ □ (13 out of 355 Selected)											

9. Fill Sinks

This tool fills in the sinks in the input DEM and generates the output Fil grid. The Deranged Polygon is an optional input that will be ignored if left blank. If it is specified, it will be used to locate the areas that should not be filled (i.e. real sinks).

You are going to run the tool twice. The first time you will fill all sinks and create a filled grid called FillAll. The second time you will not fill the real sinks, i.e. the Sink Poly features having IsSink = 1.

First run

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Fill Sinks**.
- Select PreFillDEM as input DEM and rename the output Hydro DEM FilAll.
- Leave Fill Threshold and Input Deranged Polygon blank and click OK.

Note that "Use IsSink field" is used only when a Deranged Polygon is set, to indicate whether to use only the features having IsSink set to 1.

🔨 Fill Sinks	_ • •
Input DEM PreFillDEM C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\FilAll Fill Threshold (optional) Input Deranged Polygon (optional) Use IsSink field (optional)	Fill Sinks Fills sinks in a grid. If a cell is surrounded by higher elevation cells, the water is trapped in that cell and cannot flow. The Fill Sinks tool modifies the elevation value to eliminate these problems.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The function fills all the sinks in the input DEM.

- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Fill Sinks.
- Select PreFillDEM as input DEM and rename the output Hydro DEM FilSink.
- Select SinkPoly as Input Deranged Polygon and check "Use IsSink field". Click OK.

🔨 Fill Sinks	- • ×
Input DEM PreFilIDEM Output Hydro DEM C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\FilSink Fill Threshold (optional)	Fill Sinks Fills sinks in a grid. If a cell is surrounded by higher elevation cells, the water is trapped in that cell and cannot flow. The Fill Sinks tool
Input Deranged Polygon (optional) SinkPoly Image: Control of the second sec	modifies the elevation value to eliminate these problems.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool fills only the sinks having $IsSink \ll 1$, i.e. it does not fill the sink polygons identified as real sinks that have IsSink = 1.

10. Flow Direction

This tool computes the flow direction grid for an input Hydro DEM, i.e. a DEM that may have modified by reconditioning, walls building, filling, etc.

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Flow Direction**.
- Specify FillAll as input HydroDEM and rename the output flow direction grid FdrFilled.
- Leave the optional input Outer Wall Polygon blank and click OK.

Now Direction	- • ×
Input Hydro DEM FilAll Output Flow Direction Grid C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\FdrFilled Input Outer Wall Polygon (optional) Image: Comparison of the second sec	Flow Direction Generates the flow direction grid where each cell indicates the direction of the steepest descent from that cell. If an Outer Wall Polygon is specified, the resulting Flow Direction Grid will be masked to this feature class. This allows getting rid of the expanded extent created by the Build Walls Function.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the Flow Direction Grid associated to the input Hydro DEM and adds it to the Table of Contents of ArcMap.

11. Flow Direction with Sinks

This tool generates the Flow Direction Grid for DEMs with sinks and ensures that the water from each cell within a given sink drainage area flows towards the same location in the sink polygon represented by a sink point.

- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Flow Direction with Sinks.
- Select FilSink as input Hydro DEM, i.e. a filled elevation grid with sinks. Set SinkPoly as the input Deranged Polygon feature class representing the sinks. Only the sink features having IsSink set to 1 will be considered as sinks. Set the optional Outer Wall Polygon to blank.
- Rename the output Flow Direction Grid FdrSink and click OK.

Notes The States		_ 0 💌
Input Hydro DEM	*	Flow Direction with
FilSink 💌 🖻		Sinks
Input Deranged Polygon		
SinkPoly 💌 🖻		Generates the Flow Direction
Output Flow Direction Grid		grid for a filled DEM with
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\FdrSink		unfilled deranged polygons (e.g. sinks) by forcing each cell
Output Sink Point		within a deranged polygon to
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\SinkPoint		flow toward a sink point located
Output Sink Link Grid		within the deranged polygon.
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\SinkLnk		
Output Sink Watershed Grid		
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\SinkWshd		
Input Outer Wall Polygon (optional)		
🚽 🖻		
	-	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help

The tool generates the output Flow Direction Grid as well as the output Sink Point feature class, Sink Link Grid and Sink Watershed Grid. The Sink Point feature class stores the point toward which each cell within a sink will flow. The Sink Link Grid is a grid where each sink has a unique identifier. Sink Watershed Grid is a grid representing the drainage areas for each sink. It may be used later in the analysis to define the areas where the drainage lines should not be created.

12. Flow Accumulation

This tool generates the Flow Accumulation grid associated to the input flow direction grid: each cell in the flow accumulation grid stores the number of cells located upstream of that cell.

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Flow Accumulation**.
- Select FdrFilled as input Flow Direction Grid. Click OK.
- The tool generates the output flow accumulation grid and adds it to the map.

K Flow Accumulation	
Input Flow Direction Grid	Flow Accumulation
FdrFilled Output Flow Accumulation Grid C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\Fac	Computes the flow accumulation grid that contains the accumulated number of cells upstream of a cell, for each cell in the input flow direction grid.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

13. Stream Definition

This tool generates the stream grid for an input flow accumulation grid and a threshold. Unlike the related function in the standard Arc Hydro tools, you need to specify the threshold in number of cells defining where a stream should start without any feedback from the function. The recommended value is usually around 1% of the maximum flow accumulation value.

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Stream Definition**.
- Select Fac as input Flow Accumulation Grid and specify a threshold that is approximately 1% of the maximum value of the Flow Accumulation grid (i.e. 40,000 for the tutorial data). Click OK.

🔨 Stream Definition	
Input Flow Accumulation Grid	Stream Definition
Fac Vumber of cells to define stream	Takes a flow accumulation grid as input and creates a Stream Grid for a user-
Output Stream Grid C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\Str	defined threshold. This threshold is defined as a number of cells.
Area SqKm to define stream (optional)36	
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output stream grid and adds it to the map.

14. Stream Segmentation

This tool generates the stream link grid for an input stream grid and flow direction grid. All cells in a given link segment have the same value that uniquely identify the segment.

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Stream Segmentation**.
- Specify the input stream grid and flow direction grid and the output stream link grid, and keep the optional Sink Watershed Grid and Sink Link Grid inputs blank.

Notes

- If you do not want to create stream links (and hence drainage lines later on) within the sinks, specify an input Sink Link Grid.
- If you do not want to create stream links within the drainage areas of the sinks, specify an input Sink Watershed Grid.

🔨 Stream Segmentation	
Input Stream Grid	Stream Segmentation
Str 💌 🖻	
Input Flow Direction Grid	Creates a grid of stream segments that
FdrFilled 🗾 🖻	have a unique identification.
Output Stream Link Grid	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\StrLnk	
Input Sink Watershed Grid (optional)	
💌 🖻	
Input Sink Link Grid (optional)	
💌 🖻	
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output stream link grid StrLnk and adds it to the map.

15. Flow Direction with Streams

This tool generates the Drainage Line feature class first based on the input Flow Direction Grid. It subsequently uses the input Stream feature class to add any existing flow splits. This tool may be used instead of the Stream Definition tool that uses a threshold to generate the Drainage Line. It does not use a threshold but tries to match as closely as possible the geometry of the input digitized streams. Another reason to use it instead of the Stream Definition tool is that it allows maintaining flows splits.

This tool edits the input Flow Direction grid to generate an output Stream Sloped Flow Direction grid that ensures that the water remains within a given stream and does not jump between streams near confluences. It also generates the output Stream Link Grid required to generate Catchments.

The output Edit Points and HydroRiverPoints feature classes are used in the grid editing process.

Note

The input Stream feature class must contain a populated HydroID field.

- Double-click Attribute Tools > Assign HydroID.
- Select NHDFlowline as input feature class and click OK.

🔨 Assign HydroID	- • -
Input Feature Class/Table Name	Assign HydrolD
NHDFlowline 🗾 🔁	
Overwrite HydroID (optional)	Creates HydroID field if needed and populates it with the next available HydroIDs. HydroIDs are unique within the geodatabase.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool creates and populates the HydroID field in the attributed table of NHDFlowline.

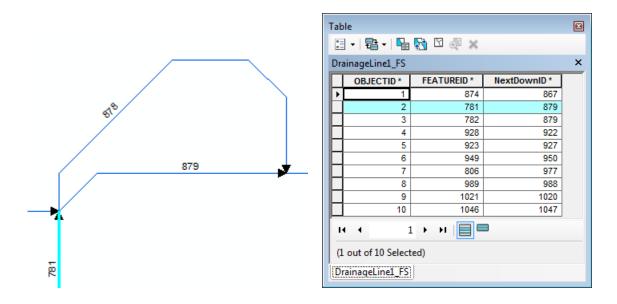
- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Flow Direction with Streams.
- Specify FdrFilled as input Flow Direction Grid and NHDFlowline as input Stream.
- Rename the output StrSlpFdr1, StrLnk1, EditPoints1, HydroRiverPoints1 and DrainageLine1 and click OK.

Nov Direction with Streams				×
Input Flow Direction Grid	_	-	Flow Direction with Streams	*
FdrFilled	2			
Input Stream	_		Creates a modified Flow Direction Grid and	
NHDFlowline	2		Drainage Line based on an input Flow Direction	
Output Stream Sloped Flow Direction Grid	_		Grid and input Stream feature class.	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\StrSlpFdr1	2		Learn more about how Flow Direction with	
Output Stream Link Grid	_		Streams (Arc Hydro) works.	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\StrLnk1	2			
Output Edit Points	_			
C:\TUTORIAL\RESULTS\GPTOOLS\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\EditPoints1	2			
Output HydroRiver Points	_			
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\HydroRiverPoints1	2			
Output Drainage Line				
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\DrainageLine1	6			
	_			
	Ŧ			Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments	ide Help	1	Tool Help	
		, 		

The 5 outputs are added into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.

ai	nageLine1								
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	GridID	FROM_NODE *	TO_NODE *	HydroID	NextDownID *	FeatureID
Γ	55	Polyline	11079.108217	778	105	106	778	837	3820
	56	Polyline	9393.595231	779	107	108	779	859	3819
	57	Polyline	11118.153673	780	109	110	780	864	3818
	58	Polyline	4808.010819	781	111	112	781	878	3817
	59	Polyline	2370.365799	782	113	112	782	878	3816
	60	Polyline	5924.406922	783	114	115	783	894	3815
	61	Polyline	1079.116882	784	116	117	784	900	3814

The tool also generates in the target geodatabase the flow split table DrainageLine1_FS that stores additional downstream connectivity.



16. Combine Stream Link and Sink Link

This tool generates the link grid by combining links for dendritic (stream link) and deranged (sink link) terrains.

• Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Combine Stream Link and Sink Link.

🔨 Combine Stream Link and Sink Link	
Input Stream Link Grid	Combine Stream Link and Sink Link
StrLnk 🔽 🖻	
Input Sink Link Grid	Generates the combined link grid representing
SinkLnk 🗾 🖆	both dendritic and deranged terrains.
Output Link Grid	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\Lnk	
-	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Specify the input Stream Link Grid and Sink Link Grid, as well as the output Link Grid. Click OK.

The tool creates the Sink Link Grid and adds it into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.

17. Catchment Grid Delineation

This tool generates the catchment grid associated to an input flow direction grid and link grid.

- Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Catchment Grid Delineation**.
- Select FdrFilled as input Flow Direction grid and StrLink as input Link Grid. Click OK.

K Catchment Grid Delineation			3
Input Flow Direction Grid	^	Catchment Grid Delineation	^
FdrFilled	▣ 🖻 🛛	Creates a grid in which each cell carries a value	
StrLnk	- 🖻	(grid code) indicating to which catchment the cell belongs. The value corresponds to the	
Output Catchment Grid C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Lavers\Cat	e	value carried by the stream segment that drains	
		that area, defined in the input Link grid.	-
OK Cancel Environments	<< Hide Help	Tool Help	

The tool generates the output catchment grid and adds it to the map.

18. Catchment Polygon Processing

This tool generates the catchment polygon feature classes corresponding to the input catchment grid.

• Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Catchment Polygon Processing.

K Catchment Polygon Processing		
Input Catchment Grid		Catchment Polygon Processing
Cat	I 🖻 🗌	
Output Catchment		Converts an input catchment grid into a
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\Catchment		catchment polygon feature class.
	+	-
OK Cancel Environments	<< Hide Help	Tool Help

• Specify the input catchment grid and output catchment polygon feature class. Click OK.

] • 碧 • �� tchment	N 🖸 🕀	×				×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID *	GridID *	- A
	1	Polygon	78780	138075300	1274	1	
	2	Polygon	120840	263818800	1275	2	
	3	Polygon	36720	36160200	1276	3	
	4	Polygon	79260	95192100	1277	4	
	5	Polygon	105300	178023600	1278	5	
	6	Polygon	73380	98660700	1279	6	-
Ca	• • • 50 atchment) • • [🔲 🔲 (0 out of !	51 Selected)			

The tool generates the output catchment polygon feature class and adds it to the map.

19. Drainage Line Processing

This tool generates the drainage line feature class associated to an input stream link grid and flow direction grid.

- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing > Drainage Line Processing.
- Select StrLnk as input Stream Link Grid and FdrFilled as input Flow Direction Grid. Rename the output DrainageLine and click OK.

🔨 Drainage Line Processing	
Input Stream Link Grid	Drainage Line Processing
Input Flow Direction Grid	Converts the input Stream Link grid into a Drainage Line feature class. Each line in the feature class carries the identifier of the catchment in which it
Output Drainage Line C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\DrainageLine	resides and how it connects to its downstream features.
*	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output drainage line feature class and adds it to the map.

ıbl ∷≣	-	N 🖸 🕂	×							E
	inageLine									>
Т	OBJECTID *	Shape *	arcid	from_node	to_node	Shape_Length	HydroID *	GridID *	NextDownID *	14
	1	Polyline	1	3	2	340.918831	1325	3	1327	
Г	2	Polyline	2	1	2	16035.42856	1326	1	1327	1
T	3	Polyline	3	2	5	44230.331137	1327	2	1330	1
1	4	Polyline	4	6	5	26980.161236	1328	5	1330	1
1	5	Polyline	5	4	7	14677.96644	1329	6	1343	1
1	6	Polyline	6	5	11	17504.987002	1330	4	1333	1.
i i Dra	InageLine ≤	• •		(0 out of 51 Sel	ected)			,		1

20. Adjoint Catchment Processing

This tool generates the adjoint catchment polygon feature class associated to an input catchment and drainage line feature classes.

• Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing** > **Adjoint Catchment Processing** and click OK.

Iput Drainage Line DrainageLine Iput Catchment Catchment utput Adjoint Catchment C: \Tutorial\Results \GPTools \GPTOOLS.GDB \Layers \AdjointCatchment	- 6 - 6 - 6	Adjoint Catchment Processing Generates the aggregated upstream catchments from the "Catchment" feature class. For each catchment that is not a head catchment, a polygon representing the whole upstream area draining to its inlet point is constructed and stored in a feature class that has an "Adjoint Catchment" tag. This feature class is used to speed up the point delineation process.
OK Cancel Environments <	< Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output adjoint catchment polygon feature class and adds it to the map. The field DrainID stores the HydroID of the associated Catchment.

١dj	jointCatchment							
Ι	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	DrainID	GridID	
I	1	Polygon	87540	174235500	1376	1275	2	1
I	2	Polygon	175560	616077900	1377	1277	4	
T	3	Polygon	210300	751035600	1378	1281	8	
٦	4	Polygon	60120	92359800	1379	1287	14	
٦	5	Polygon	84660	183294000	1380	1288	15	
٦	6	Polygon	105780	288476100	1381	1290	17	

The tool also creates and populates the field NextDownID in the Catchment feature class with the HydroID of the next downstream Catchment. It also creates the flow split table Catchment_FS that stores the additional connectivity. This table is created empty as there is no flow split in the input Drainage Line feature class.

The tool populates the field DrainID in the Drainage Line feature class with the HydroID of its associated Catchment.

21. Drainage Point Processing

This tool generates the drainage point feature class associated to an input catchment feature class and flow accumulation grid. Drainage Point features represent the location of the cell with the maximum flow accumulation value within each catchment.

🔨 Drainage Point Processing	
Input Flow Accumulation Grid	Drainage Point Processing
Fac Input Catchment Grid	Creates a drainage point at the most downstream
Cat 🗾 🖻	point in the catchment (center of a grid cell with the largest value in the flow accumulation grid for
Input Catchment	that catchment).
Catchment 🗾 🚰	
Output Drainage Point	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GPTOOLS.GDB\Layers\DrainagePoint	
-	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Drainage Point Processing** and click OK.

The tool generates the output Drainage Point feature class and adds it to the map. The DrainID field stores the HydroID of the associated Catchment.

] • 碧 • 堝 ainagePoint					×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	DrainID	GridID	HYDROID	
	1	Point	1274	1	1401	
	2	Point	1276	3	1402	
	3	Point	1275	2	1403	
Π	4	Point	1278	5	1404	
Π	5	Point	1279	6	1405	
_	6	Point	1281	8	1406	-

22. Slope

This tools generates the slope grid in percent or degrees associated to the input DEM. It reads the ZUnit from the projection file defined for the grid and applies the corresponding ZFactor to the elevations in the grid to obtain a slope with the correct units.

• Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing** > **Slope** and specify the input DEM and the type of measurement for the grid (percent or degree). Keep the default name for the output Slope grid and click OK.

🔨 Slope	- • •
Input Raw DEM	Slope
elev_cm 💌 🖻	
Output Slope	Generates slope grid.
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\WshSlope	
Output measurement (optional)	
PERCENT_RISE	
۲	·
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the Slope grid for the input DEM.

23. Depression Evaluation

This tool allows characterizing potential depressions in the input DEMam within that lake.

• Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing > Depression Evaluation** and specify the input DEM. Keep the defaults for the output Depression and Depression Drainage Area feature classes. Click OK.

N Depression Evaluation		
Input DEM	^	Depression Evaluation
PreFillDEM		
Output Depression	_	Learn more about how Depression Evaluation (Arc Hydro)
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \GPTOOLS.GDB \Layers \Depression		works
Output Depression Drainage Area	_	Occurrent and alternativity and article descensions in a
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \GPTOOLS.GDB \Layers \DepressionDA		Generates and characterizes potential depressions in a DEM.
	_	DEM.
	~	v
OK Cancel Environments <	< Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the Depression and Depression Area polygon feature classes.

abl E	e ▼ 뢉•	F 🔂 🛙	e							
Depression										
Т	HydroID	GridID	DrainID	IsSink	FillDepth	FillArea	FillVolume	BottomElev	FillElev	DrainArea
·	1807	1	1452	0	0.22	2700	333	494.11	494.33	1300500
Γ	1808	2	1453	0	0.306641	3600	679.21875	469.45	469.756641	1295100
ľ	1809	3	1454	0	0.29	2700	441	463.2	463.49	2012400
ľ	1810	4	1455	0	0.23	2700	405	450.66	450.89	1132200
Γ	1811	5	1456	0	0.28	4500	846	508.22	508.5	1620900
										4
н	•	1 +	•1	(0 out of	355 Selected)					
Dei	pression	-			,					

De	pressionDA						3
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	GRIDID	1
۲	1	Polygon	5880	1300500	1452	1	
	2	Polygon	6840	1295100	1453	2	
	3	Polygon	7500	2012400	1454	3	
	4	Polygon	6660	1132200	1455	4	
	5	Polygon	7020	1620900	1456	5	
	6	Polygon	8100	2097000	1457	6	

24. Adjust Flow Direction in Lakes

This tool allows editing the input Flow Direction Grid within lake features intersecting input streams so that any cell within a lake flows toward the closest stream within that lake.

• Double-click **Terrain Preprocessing** > **Adjust Flow Direction in Lakes** and specify the input DEM and the type of measurement for the grid (percent or degree). Keep the default name for the output Slope grid and click OK.

🔨 Adjust Flow Direction in Lakes	
Input Flow Direction Grid	Adjust Flow Direction in
Input Lake Polygon NHDWaterbody Input Stream NHDFlowline	Arc Hydro Adjust Flow Direction in Lakes function
Output Bowled Flow Direction Grid C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Layers\BowlFdr	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

Note

You can cleanup the temporary folder associated to the tools by using the function ApUtilities > Additional Utilities Clean User's Temp Folder available on the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar in ArcMap.

• Save your map and close your map document.

After closing the map, you may want to manually cleanup any remaining (locked) files in your windows temp location. This location defaults to C:\Documents and Settings\username\Local Settings\Temp.

Terrain Preprocessing Workflows

The Terrain Preprocessing Workflows toolset contains 4 models as examples of models that string together some of the Terrain Preprocessing tools and allow performing a dendritic terrain preprocessing workflow. It also contains a Batch Processing tool allowing running a model on multiple input data in batch mode.

Terrain Preprocessing Workflows
 Basic Combined Terrain Processing
 Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing
 Basic Deranged Terrain Processing
 Satch Processing
 Dendritic Terrain Processing with Imposed Drainage Line and Wall

Note

Additional examples of workflows that apply to diverse types of terrains are provided in the document "Comprehensive terrain preprocessing using Arc Hydro tools".

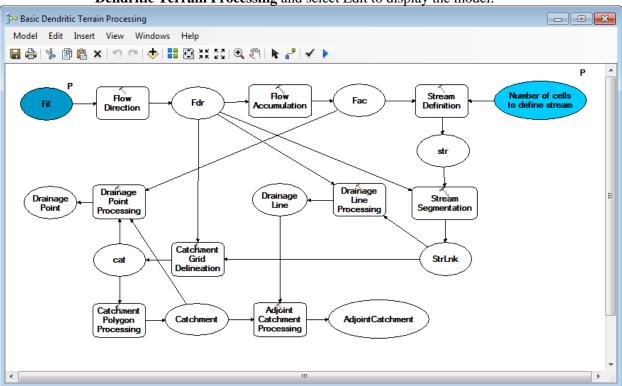
1. Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing

- Open a new map and add the filled DEM grid "filall"grid from the DataGP\Model folder. Add the Arc Hydro Tools toolbox if needed and save the map as Model.mxd for example.
- Right-click **Terrain Preprocessing Workflows > Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing** and select Open.

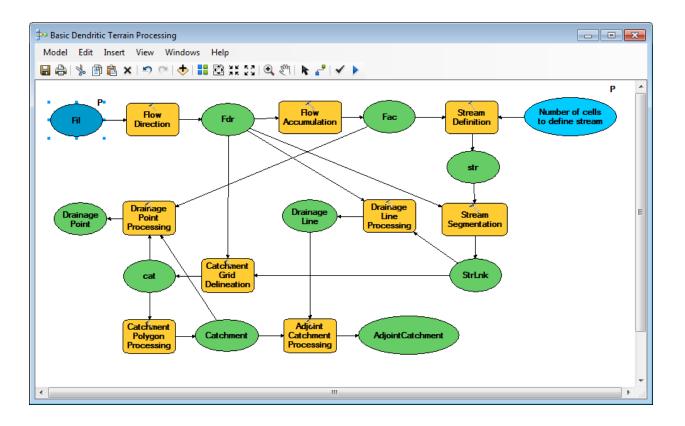
The model requires 2 input parameters: a filled DEM and the number of cells defining a stream. This threshold is used in the model to define the stream grid from the flow accumulation grid.

📴 Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing	3
Click error and warning icons for more information	*
SFil Fil Number of cells to define stream	
S000	
	Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>	

• Click Cancel to close the form and right-click **Batch Terrain Preprocessing > Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing** and select Edit to display the model.



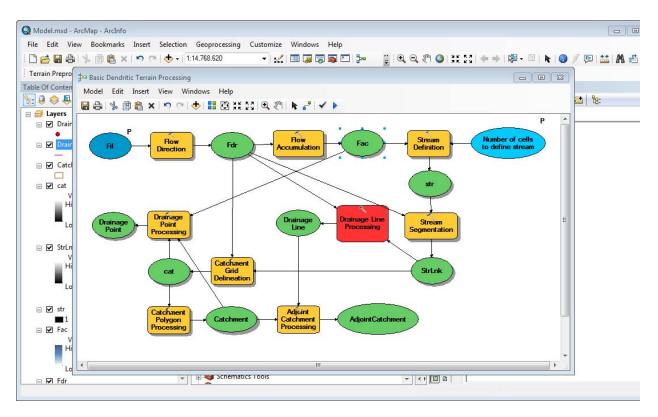
• Right-click Fil and select Open. Browse to an input Filled DEM grid FilAll and click OK.



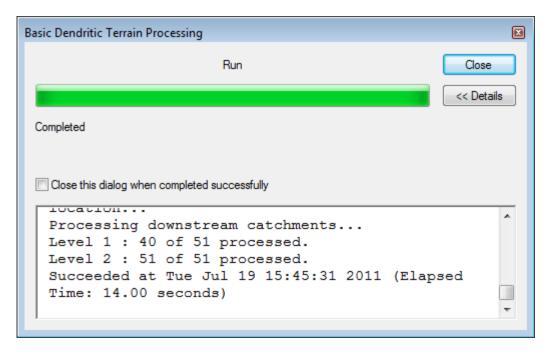
- Right-click Number of cells and select an appropriate threshold for the input filled DEM (e.g. 40,000 if you are using the tutorial data). Click OK.
- Right-click and open each data in the green circles. Remove the full path if needed and keep only the name of the output data. If the full path is set, the tool will generate the data in that location. If it is not set, it will use the default target vector/raster location set in the environment.

😂 Fac		×
Fac		
Fac		2
		T
(OK Cancel	Apply Show Help >>

- After resetting the data paths if needed, select Model > Run or click the arrow on the toolbar to run the model.
- The execution processes through each step the tool currently being run is displayed in red.

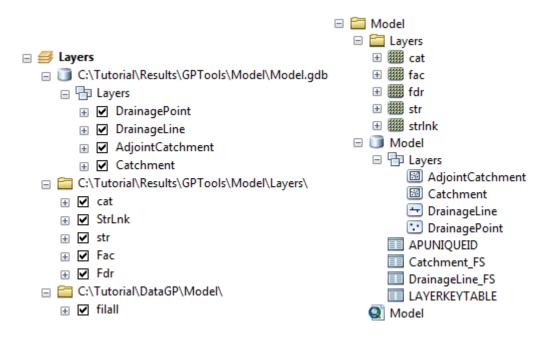


The model will run through each tool and updates the status in the processing window to "Completed" when done. Note that Flow Accumulation is the slowest step in the model and can take up to a few minutes.



• Close the model without saving the changes after completion of the run.

The following data is generated and added into the Table of Contents of ArcMap:



Note

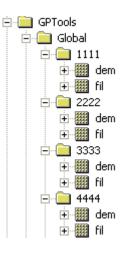
You may need to add the tables Catchment_FS and DrainageLine_FS manually.

• Save your map and close ArcMap.

2. Batch Processing

The Batch Processing tool allows running a model in batch mode. It will run the model for each subdirectory within the global location specified as input parameter by the user. The batch tool is configured by default to run with the Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing model. You are going to use the tutorial data from the DataGP\Global directory.

- Copy the DataGP\Global directory into the location where you want to create your data (e.g. Results\GPTools).
- This directory contains 4 subdirectories (1111, 2222, 3333 and 4444) that each contains an elevation grid (dem) and a filled elevation grid (fil).



The dem is the original elevation grid for each area considered and the fil grid the corresponding filled elevation grid. The fil elevation is the input grid used by the previous workflow. The batch process allows applying the workflow to each fil grid and generating the preprocessed data for each subdirectory in batch mode. Note that the same threshold will be used to generate the stream grid for each study area (e.g. 10000 cells).

- Open a new map document. You do not need to save the map.
- Right-click the model Basin Dendritic Terrain Processing and make sure that none of the data in green is set using a full path. Remove the path if needed. Close and save the model if you edited it.
- Double-click Terrain Preprocessing Workflows > Batch Processing.
- Browse to the global location containing the subdirectories to process. Each subdirectory must contain the inputs required to run the model (fil) as well as the grid used to create the output Spatial Reference for the vector location (fil).

K Batch Processing			3
Input Global Data Location	^	Batch Processing	^
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Global			
Input Model and Command Line Arguments		Executes input geoprocessing model in batch mode. The	
BasicDendriticTerrainProcessing_archydro %RASTERLOCATION%\fil 10000		tool wil runs the model for each subdirectory located under	
Input Name of Grid used to set the output Spatial Reference		the specified Input Global Data Location. Learn more about how Batch Processing (Arc Hydro) works	
Fil		now batch Processing (Arc Hydro) works	
	Ŧ		Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

• Keep the default for Input Model and Command Line Arguments but replace 5000 with 10000 for the stream threshold to use. By default, this parameter is set to:

BasicDendriticTerrainProcessing_archydro %RASTERLOCATION%\fil 5000

Where:

- BasicDendriticTerrainProcessing_archydro is the name of the model to run
- %RASTERLOCATION%\fil 10000 are the input parameters required by the model:
- %RASTERLOCATION% is the raster target location that will be replaced on runtime with the raster location corresponding to the subdirectory being processed.
- 5000 is the threshold in number of cells defining the start of a stream.

Notes

- Input vector data would be defined using the variable %VECTORLOCATION% that would be replaced on run time with the vector target location for each subdirectory.
- Specify the name of the grid used to set the spatial reference for the output vector location (e.g. fil). This grid must exist in each subdirectory.
- Click OK to run the tools.

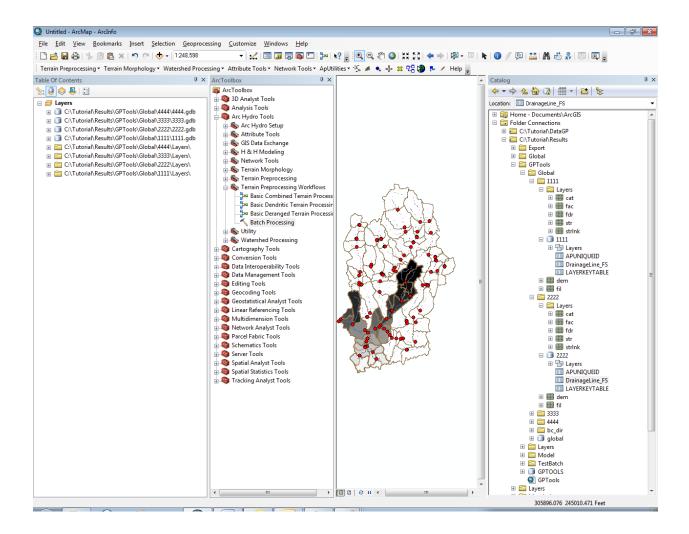
For each subdirectory under the specified global data location:

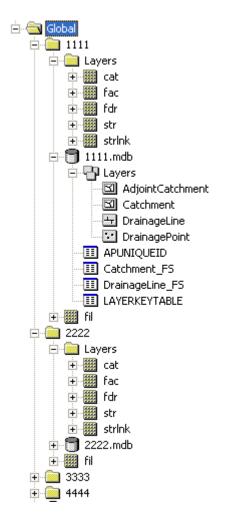
- 1. The batch tool first runs the Set Batch Target Locations geoprocessing tool using the name of the specified Grid. You need to have a raster with that name (e.g. Fil) in each subdirectory.
- 2. The batch tool then runs the specified model. It stores its name in the active configuration in memory under

HydroConfig/ProgParams/ApFunctions/ApFunction(BatchTerrainProcessing)/BatchProcessingMo delName.

Note

The batch tool resets the initial Arc Hydro configuration at the end of the processing.





• Close the map without saving it.

3. How to create your own model

This section describes how to edit the existing model to create a new model that will require as input a Raw DEM (e.g. elev_cm) and a stream feature class (e.g. NHDFlowline).

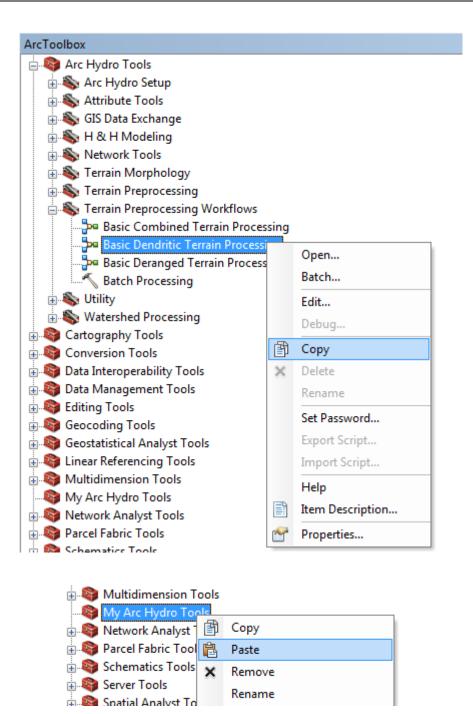
- Open a new map document and add the Arc Hydro toolbox if needed.
- Right-click ArcToolbox and select Add Toolbox. Navigate to the location where you want to store your new toolbox (e.g. Results\GPTools) and then click the New Toolbox icon on the top right of the Add Toolbox window.

Add Toolbox				
Look in:	GPTools 🔻	💪 🏠 🗔 🟥	- 🖴 🖴	T 🚳
Global 🚰 Layers				New Toolbox
Model Content Model				
GPTOOLS.	GDB			
Name:				
Show of type:	Toolboxes		▼ Can	cel

• Rename the new toolbox "My Arc Hydro Tools.tbx". Click Open to add the toolbox into the ArcToolbox window.

Add Toolbox	—
Look in: 🔁 GPTools 🔹 🏠 🕼 🗮 🛪	🖴 🖆 🧊 🚳
Global Layers	
Model	
GPTOOLS.GDB	
My Arc Hydro Tools.tbx	
l	
Name:	Open
Show of type: Toolboxes -	Cancel

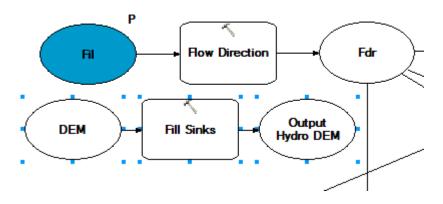
• Right-click the Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing model and select Copy. Navigate to your new toolbox, right-click and select Paste.



• Right-click the model in your new toolbox and select Properties. Switch to the General tab. Rename this model BasicDendriticTerrainProcessingAgreeFill and label it "Basic Terrain Preprocessing with Reconditioning and Fill". Click OK.

Basic Dendritic Terrain Processing Properties	? 💌
General Parameters Environments Help Iteration	
Name:	
BasicDendriticTerrainProcessingAgreeFill	
Label:	
Basic Terrain Preprocessing with Reconditioning and Fill	
Description:	
· · ·	
Stylesheet:	
Store relative path names (instead of absolute paths)	
Always run in foreground	
OK Cancel	Apply

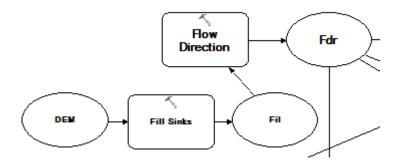
• Right-click the model and select Edit. Drag the Fill Sinks tool from the Arc Hydro Tools toolbox > Terrain Preprocessing toolset into the model.



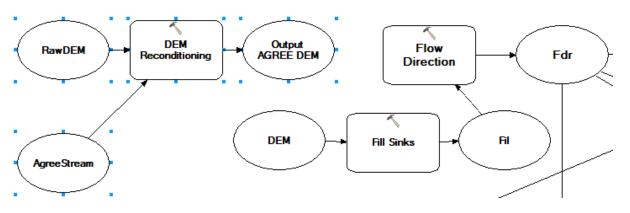
- Delete the Fil grid input to the Flow Direction tool.
- Select the DerangedPoly input to Fill Sinks if visible and delete it as this is an optional output that will not be used. Right-click Fill Sinks and select Open. Set the Fill Threshold to blank, the output to Fil and click OK.

🔨 Fill Sinks				×
Click error and warning icons for more information		× ^	Fill Sinks	*
Input DEM DEM Output Hydro DEM Fil Fill Threshold (optional) Input Deranged Polygon (optional) Use IsSink field (optional)	• 🖻 • •		Fills sinks in a grid. If a cell is surrounded by higher elevation cells, the water is trapped in that cell and cannot flow. The Fill Sinks tool modifies the elevation value to eliminate these problems.	Ŧ
OK Cancel Apply	<< Hide He	lp	Tool Help	

- Click to select and delete the input grid to the Flow Direction tool (e.g. filall).
- Right-click Flow Direction, select Open and set the input Hydro DEM to Fil, the output to the Fill Sinks tool.

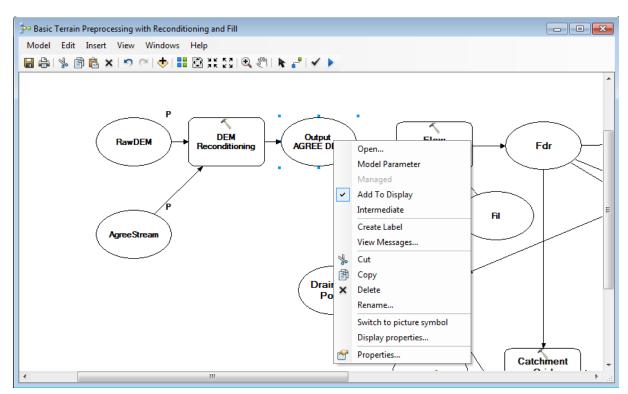


• Save the model, then drag DEM Reconditioning into the model.

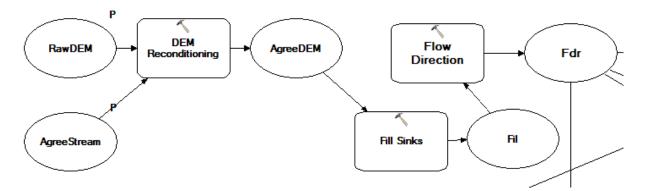


- Delete the input to the Fill Sinks tool (e.g. DEM). Right-click Fill Sinks and select Open. Set its input grid to Output AGREE DEM.
- Right-click RawDEM and AgreeStream and make them Model Parameters.

• Right-click Fill and AGREE DEM and make sure they are not set as "Intermediate" and have Add to Display checked.



• Review the inputs/outputs (e.g. AgreeDEM) by right-clicking them and clicking Open and make sure they are not using a full path but only the layer tag name.



- Save and close the model. Save the map as MyModel.mxd for example in a MyModel subdirectory.
- Add the input data used by the model: DataGP\Model\elev_cm and DataGP\SanMarcos.gdb\NHDFlowline. Save the map.
- Double-click the model. Make sure the inputs are correct and click OK.

E

	📴 Basic Terrain Preprocessing with Reconditioning and Fill 📃 💷 📧	
	Number of cells to define stream 40000	
	RawDEM	
	elev_cm	
	AgreeStream	
	NHDFlowline 🔽 🖻	
	OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>	
asic Terrain P	Preprocessing with Reconditioning and Fill	×
Completed		Close
		< Details
		< Details
Close this (s dialog when completed successfully	
	ting Catchment View	*
	essing all upstream catchments ing Catchment feature class to temp location	
	essing downstream catchments	
	L 1 : 42 of 53 processed. L 2 : 53 of 53 processed.	
	eeded at Wed Jul 20 07:15:34 2011 (Elapsed Time: 11.00 seconds)	
Succeed	ded at Wed Jul 20 07:15:34 2011 (Elapsed Time: 4 minutes 32 seconds)
1		

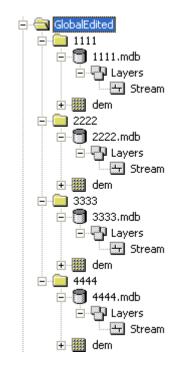
The outputs from the model are generated and added into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.

-	Ø	Layers
		C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\MyModel\MyModel.gdb
		🖃 🖶 Layers
		🕀 🗹 DrainagePoint
		🗄 🗹 DrainageLine
		🗄 🗹 AdjointCatchment
		🗄 🗹 Catchment
		C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\MyModel\Layers\
		🕀 🔽 cat
		🕀 🔽 StrLnk
		🕀 🔽 str
		🕀 🔽 Fac
		🕀 🔽 Fdr
		🕀 🔽 Fil
		🕀 🗹 AgreeDEM
	-	🚞 C:\Tutorial\DataGP\Model\
	_	C:\Tutorial\DataGP\Model\SanMarcos.gdb
		🖃 🖶 Hydrography
		Image: MHDFlowline

• Save the map and close ArcMap.

4. How to run your own model in batch mode

• Copy the directory DataGP\GlobalEdited. It contains the input data required to run the model you created in the previous step, i.e. DEM and stream feature class.



• Open a new map document. You do not need to save the map.

If you do not see the model you previously created, you need to add it to the ArcToolbox window.

• Right-click ArcToolbox and select Add Toolbox. Browse to the location where you have saved the new toolbox and open My Arc Hydro Tools.tbx.

The Batch Processing tool requires 3 inputs:

- Input Global Data Location: parent directory containing the subdirectories to process (GlobalEdited)
- Input Model and Command Line Arguments needs to be updated to reflect the new model/arguments
- Input Name of Grid use to set the output Spatial Reference same as previously

Satch Processing	
 Input Global Data Location 	
Input Model and Command Line Arguments	
BasicDendriticTerrainProcessing_archydro %RASTERLOCATION%\fil 5000	
Input Name of Grid used to set the output Spatial Reference	
Fil	
	1
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>	

- 1. The batch tool first runs the Set Batch Target Locations geoprocessing tools using the input name of the grid specified. You need to have a raster with that name in each subdirectory under your global data location.
- 2. The batch tool then runs the model specified.

The batch tool retrieves the name of the grid used to setup the spatial reference in the subdirectories and the name and parameters of the model from the specified parameters. Default values are read from the active configuration in the ArcMap or ArcCatalog session.

- The batch tool retrieves the parameters for the tools used in the model based on the active Arc Hydro configuration.
- The name and parameter(s) of the model run by the Batch Dendritic Terrain Preprocessing tool is defined in the configuration as well. You can modify the configuration so that the batch tool calls your own model.
- Open the Python window in ArcMap or ArcCatalog and paste the following to see the usage for your model:

print

```
arcpy.Usage("BasicDendriticTerrainProce
ssingAgreeFill")
```

The following text is displayed:

Python		
>>> print arcpy.Usage	~	*
("BasicDendriticTerrainProcessingAgreeFill")		
BasicDendriticTerrainProcessingAgreeFill		
(Number of cells to define stream, RawDEM,		
AgreeStream)		
(null)		
>>>		
	Ŧ	Ŧ

The default BatchProcessingModelName is set to:

BasicDendriticTerrainProcessing_archydro %RASTERLOCATION%\fil 5000

• Set it to your own model and make sure the parameters are listed in the correct order.

BasicDendriticTerrainProcessingAgreeFill 10000 %RASTERLOCATION%\dem %VECTORLOCATION%\Layers\Stream

🔨 Batch Processing	
Input Global Data Location	^
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GlobalEdited	2
Input Model and Command Line Arguments	
BasicDendriticTerrainProcessingAgreeFill 10000 %RASTERLOCATION%\dem %VECTORLOCATION%\	Layers\Stream
Input Name of Grid used to set the output Spatial Reference	
dem	
	~
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

Note that this means that a raster named dem and a feature class called Stream MUST exist in each subdirectory being processed or the model will fail for that directory.

- Browse to the global location containing the subdirectories to process (e.g. GlobalEdited). Each subdirectory must contain the inputs required to run the model as well as the grid used to setup the spatial reference for the vector locations.
- Set dem as input grid used to set the output spatial reference. Note that in this case the output locations already exist.
- Click OK to run the Batch Processing tool.

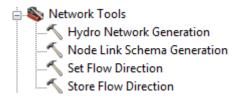
Completed	C	ose
	1>>>	Details
Close this dialog when com	pleted successfully	
Executing: Batchl "BasicDendriticTe	pleted successfully Processing C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GlobalEdited errainProcessingAgreeFill 10000 %RASTERLOCATION%\dem % Layers\Stream" dem	^
Executing: Batchl "BasicDendriticTe VECTORLOCATION%\]	Processing C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GlobalEdited errainProcessingAgreeFill 10000 %RASTERLOCATION%\dem %	*
Executing: Batchl "BasicDendriticTe VECTORLOCATION%\] Start Time: Wed & Model used: Basic	Processing C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GlobalEdited errainProcessingAgreeFill 10000 %RASTERLOCATION%\dem % Layers\Stream" dem	-

The Batch tool creates the outputs in each subdirectory.

• Close the map.

Network Tools

This section walks you through the Network Tools in the geoprocessing environment. Note that each tool has a corresponding function in the standard Arc Hydro tools toolbar.



You are going to use the data from DataGP\SanMarcos\SanMarcos.mdb in this section: Catchment, Drainage Line and DrainagePoint.

• Copy the geodatabase DataGP\Networkfolder\SanMarcos.mdb into your target directory (e.g. Results\GPTools\Network).

1. Hydro Network Generation

- Open a new map and add the DrainageLine, DrainagePoint and Catchment features classes from the copied DataGP\Network\SanMarcos.gdb geodatabase. Save the map as Network.mxd.
- Reset the target location to the Network folder and the SanMarcos.mdb geodatabase by using the Arc Hydro Setup > Set Target Locations tool.

≪ Set Target Locations		
Application Name	^	Set Target Locations
Input Map Name Layers		Creates the specified raster and target vector locations and set them as default locations for the Arc Hydro tools in
Input Raster Location Workspace C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Wetwork)	ArcMap by editing the active configuration loaded in
Input Vector Location Workspace		memory.
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Vetwork \SanMarcos.mdb		-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide He	lp	Tool Help

• Double-click **Network Tools** > **Hydro Network Generation**. Select DrainageLine, Catchment and DrainagePoint respectively as input. Keep the default names for the output Network Name, Hydro Edge and Hydro Junction and click OK.

K Hydro Network Generation	- • •
Input Drainage Line	^
DrainageLine	- 🖻
Input Catchment	
Catchment	- 🖻
Input Drainage Point	
DrainagePoint	- 🖻
Network Name	
ArcHydro	
Output Hydro Edge	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Network \SanMarcos.mdb \Layers \HydroEd	ge 🔁
Output Hydro Junction	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Wetwork\SanMarcos.mdb\Layers\HydroJu	nction 🔁
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool generates the HydroJunction and HydroEdge feature classes and builds the associated geometric network.

Tabl	le										X
0	- 🔁 - 🏪	N 🖸 🖓	×								
Hyd	droJunction										×
Π	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID *	NextDownID	FType	SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled	JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	^
	1	Point	179	180	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	
	2	Point	180	184	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	AH	NONE	
	3	Point	182	180	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	1
	4	Point	184	191	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	AH	NONE	1
	5	Point	186	184	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	1
Π	6	Point	188	189	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	-
	droJunction	4 ▶ ▶।	🔲 🔲 (0 out	t of 52 Selected)					,	,	

Tab	le									
:	- 🖶 - 🖣	🛃 🛛 📲	×							
Hy	droEdge									x
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	
Þ	1	Polyline M	340.918831	181	3	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	
	2	Polyline M	16035.42856	183	1	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	
	3	Polyline M	44230.331137	185	2	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	1
	4	Polyline M	26980.161236	187	5	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	
	5	Polyline M	14677.96644	190	6	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	
	6	Polyline M	17504.987002	192	4	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	-
ŀ	 ↓ ↓	1 > >	0 out of 51	Selected)			•			1

• Add the Utility Network Analyst toolbar if not visible.

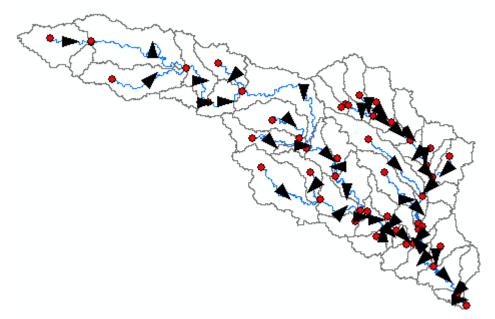
ArcHydro is displayed in the list of Network.

Utility Network Analyst			- ×	3
Network: ArcHydro	•	Flow ▼ – Analysis ▼ → Trace Task:	Find Common Ancestors 🔷 🗸	1

• On the Utility Network Analyst toolbar, select Flow > Display Arrows.

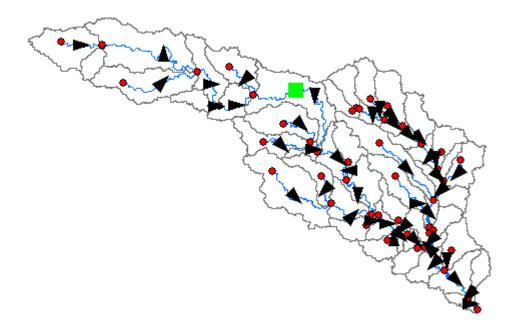
Utility Network Analyst					- ×
Network: ArcHydro 🗸	Flow	/ 🗝 🚑 🛛 Analysis 🕶 🏒 👻	Trace Task:	Find Common Ancestors	- ×
		Display Arrows For			
	1	Display Arrows			
		Properties			

The flow direction is set in the digitized direction for the HydroEdge features, so that you can perform upstream and downstream traces on the geometric network.



• On the Utility Network Analyst toolbar, select Add Edge Flag Tool and click on a map on a HydroEdge feature to place a source edge flag for a trace.

Utility Network Analyst		- ×
Network: ArcHydro	Flow ▼ ♣ Analysis ▼ ★ Trace Task: Find Common Ancestors	- ×
	Add Edge Flag Tool	

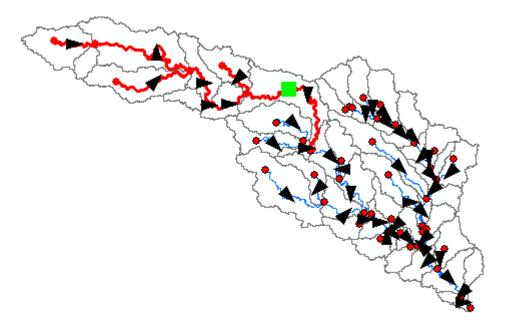


• On the Utility Network Analyst toolbar, select Trace Upstream as Trace Task and click Solve to location the junction and edge features located upstream of the flag.

Solve

Network: ArcHydro 🔹 Flow 🕶 🖧 Analysis 🗸 Trace Task: Trace Upstream 📼	${\times}$

The tool returns the upstream features as red graphics.



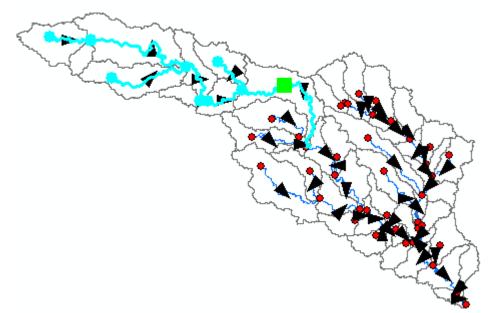
• Clear the results of the trace by selecting Analysts > Clear Results. Then modify the settings so that the results are displayed as selected features instead of graphics. Select

Analysis > Options... and in the Results tab check Selection instead of Drawings and click OK.

Analysis C	ptions			? 🔀
General	Weights	Weight Filter	Results	
Retur	_	s: Idividual eleme ace task result		plex edges
Resul © Of the	ts content ts include: All features Features s ese results Edges Junctions	topping the tra	ce	
		ОК	Cance	I <u>A</u> pply

• Click Solve to perform the upstream trace again.

This time the upstream features are selected.



The tool also creates a relationship between Hydro Junctions and associated Catchment features. The HydroID of the junction is stored in the JunctionID field of the Catchment.

• Open the Attributes table of HydroJunction and select Table Options.

Ξ	- ₽- ₽	🛃 🛛 🍕	×							
yc T	Table Options	Changet	HydroID *	NextDownID	ETuno	SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled		: _
┢	UDJECTID-	Shape *			FType		AnciliaryRole	Enabled	-	-
Ļ	1	Point	179	180	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	Ał	-
	2	Point	180	184	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	Ał	
Т	3	Point	182	180	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	Ał	
T	4	Point	184	191	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	A۲	
1	5	Point	186	184	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	A۲	
Ċ		1							Þ	
н	• :	і н н 🛛	📃 🔲 (9 out	t of 52 Selected)						

• Select Related Tables > HydroJunctionHasCatchement : Catchment.

	Find & Repl Select By At Clear Select Switch Select Select All Add Field Turn All Fiel Show Field J Arrange Tab Restore Defa Joins and Re	tributes on tion ds On Aliases ules ault Column ault Field Ord							
	Related Tab	les	•	HydroJun	ctionHasCatchment : 0	Catchment			
₽ ₽	Create Grap Add Table to Reload Cach Print Reports	o Layout							
	Export		Ī						E
	Appearance								
lydro	Junction								;
-	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID *	NextDownID	FType	SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled	JI 🔺
۶Ľ	1	Point	179	180	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1 A	NH 🗌
	2	Point	180	184	Stream Confluence	1	0		٨H
	3	Point	182	180	Drainage Inlet	0	0		٨H
	4	Point	184	191	Stream Confluence	1	0		H
-	5	Point	186	184	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1 A	H
н	• :	> >		t of 52 Selected)				,	

The Catchments associated to upstream junctions are selected and displayed in the map and in the Attributes table.

				ť	- Car	323			
able ⊶ □						**			
	n 🖓 🛛 🚭	¹ ×∣® ®	e∰ ×			~			
⊒ - 碧 - 『		GRIDCODE	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	SUM_	
圖 • 魯 • 『 atchment				Shape_Area 138075300.000002	HydrolD 1	GridID	NextDownID 2	SUM_ 3.08077	
∃ • 君 • atchment OBJECTID *)* Shape *	GRIDCODE	Shape_Length						
∃ • 君 • atchment OBJECTID *	0* Shape* 1 Polygon	GRIDCODE	Shape_Length 78780	138075300.000002	1	1	2	3.08077 1.7647	
③ ▼ 碧 ▼ 『 atchment OBJECTID *	0* Shape* 1 Polygon 2 Polygon	GRIDCODE 1 2	Shape_Length 78780 120840	138075300.000002 263818800.000002	1	1	2	3.08077 1.7647 1.889653	
= ▼ 君 ▼ atchment OBJECTID *	Shape * 1 Polygon 2 Polygon 3 Polygon	GRIDCODE 1 2 3	Shape_Length 78780 120840 36720	138075300.000002 263818800.000002 36160200	1 2 3	1 2 3	2 4 2	3.08077 1.7647 1.889653	

• Clear the selected features and the edge flag.

2. Set Flow Direction

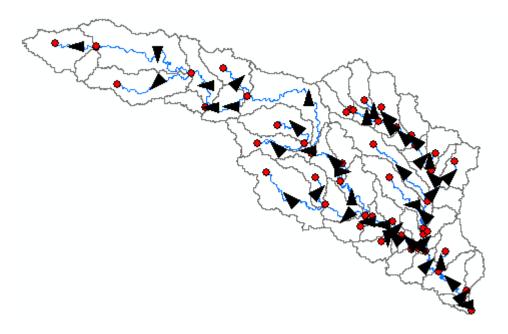
This tool allows setting the flow direction with the digitized direction of the edges, against it or to set the direction as uninitialized or indeterminate. The direction can be set for all features or using a value retrieved from the field FlowDir in the Attributes Table of HydroEdge.

The tool works on selection set of edge features or in all features if there is no selection set.

• Double-click **Network Tools > Set Flow Direction** and select Hydro Edge as input. Select AGAINST_DIGITIZED for the Flow Direction and click OK.

,				-	
HydroEdge	2				+
					×
					Ľ
Select Flow Dire					
WITH_DIGITI2					-
UNINITIALIZED					
AGAINST_DIGI					
INDETERMINA					

The tool switches the direction of the edges in the geometric network. Note that the arrows are now pointing in the opposite (upstream) direction.



3. Store Flow Direction

This tool allows storing the current flow direction in the FlowDir attribute that can be later used to reset the flow direction to its original value. It works on selected sets or on all features if there are no selected sets.

• Double-click **Network Tools > Store Flow Direction** and select Hydro Edge as input. Click OK.

Note Flow Direction	
Input Edge Feature Classes	^
	- 🖻
↔ HydroEdge	
	×
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool stores the direction of the edges in the FlowDir field. A value of 2 indicates that the direction is against the digitized direction.

abl										X
°	┺ - ┗	📈 🛛 🕀	×							
Hyd	droEdge									×
Τ	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	
	1	Polyline M	340.918831	181	3	Synthetic Channel	2	1	True	
	2	Polyline M	16035.42856	183	1	Synthetic Channel	2	1	True	
	3	Polyline M	44230.331137	185	2	Synthetic Channel	2	1	True	
	4	Polyline M	26980.161236	187	5	Synthetic Channel	2	1	True	
	5	Polyline M	14677.96644	190	6	Synthetic Channel	2	1	True	
	6	Polyline M	17504.987002	192	4	Synthetic Channel	2	1	True	
		5 🔸 州 📗	🔲 (0 out of 51	Selected)						
Ηy	/droEdge									

4. Node Link Schema Generation

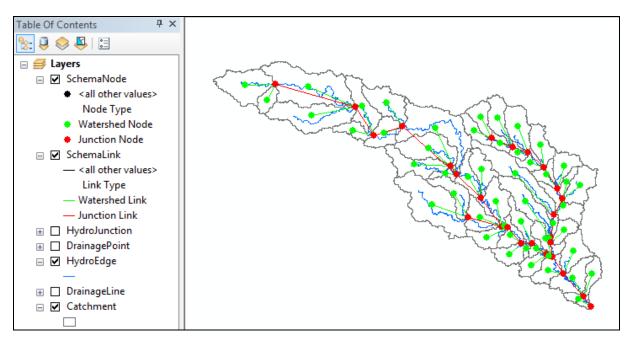
This function allows generating a node-link schema. The nodes are defined by the centers of the polygons representing basins and by points that represent locations of interest in the model. The points include basin outlets, river junctions, water intakes and other facilities.

The function requires that the relationship between the Schema Polygon features (Catchment) and their outlet be established through the JunctionID field, and the relationship between the Junctions and their next downstream junction be established through the NextDownID field.

• Double-click **Network Tools > Node Link Schema Generation.** Select Catchment and Hydro Edge as inputs. Keep the default names for the output Schema Link and Schema Node feature classes and click OK.

Node Link Schema Generation
Input Schema Polygon (optional)
Catchment 🗾 🖻
Input Schema Junction
HydroJunction 🗾 🖻
Output Schema Link
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Wetwork \SanMarcos.mdb \Layers \SchemaLink
Output Schema Node
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Wetwork \San Marcos.mdb \Layers \Schema Node
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

The tool generates links and nodes representing the connectivity in the network.



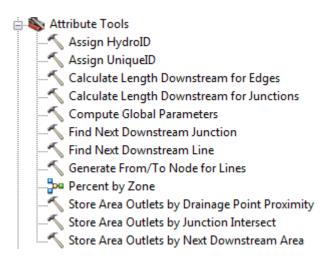
Tab	le					X
°] • 🔁 • 🏪	🛃 🛛 🚭	×			
Scł	nemaNode					×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydrolD	FeatureID	SrcType	*
Þ	1	Point	282	1	1	
	2	Point	283	180	2	
	3	Point	285	2	1	
	4	Point	286	184	2	
	5	Point	288	3	1	
	6	Point	290	4	1	Ŧ
I.	hemaNode	1 • • [out of 77 Select	ted)	

Tab	le							X
0 0	- 🗄 - 🏪	🛃 🛛 📲	×					
Scł	hemaLink							×
\Box	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	FromNodeID	ToNodeID	LinkType	
	49	Polyline	6699.62153	404	402	403	1	
	50	Polyline	7478.974431	406	405	403	1	1
	51	Polyline	4610.007731	409	407	408	1	
	52	Polyline	26023.162759	410	283	286	2	
	53	Polyline	10833.32359	411	286	291	2	1
	54	Polyline	22749.457136	412	296	299	2	-
Sc		5 🕨 🖬 🛛	(0 out of 7	76 Selected)				

• Save the map document and close then map.

Attribute Tools

These tools allow populating attributes in the specified tables or feature classes.



You will use the data from the DataGP\ModelResult folder to test these tools.

- Copy this data directory into a new location since you will be editing the data.
- Open a new map document and add the Drainage Line feature class into the Table of Contents of ArcMap. Save the map as AttributesTools.mxd for example.

In this example, you are going to use the existing database (Model.mdb) as vector target location.

• Double-click the Set Target Locations tool and browse to the existing target locations. Click OK.

Input Map Name Layers	•	Set Target Locations Creates the specified raster and target vector locations and set them as default locations for the Arc Hydro tools in
Input Raster Location Workspace C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\MyModel Input Vector Location Workspace		ArcMap by editing the active configuration loaded in memory.
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\ModelResult\model.mdb	-	

1. Assign HydroID

This tool assigns HydroIDs to the records in the specified input feature class or table. It works on the selected set or on all features if there is no selection. The tool offers the option to overwrite already existing HydroIDs.

• Open the attributes table of Drainage Line. Check the values in the HydroID field.

] • 🖶 • 🏪	1 🚰 🖸 📲	×								
iinageLine										
OBJECTID *	Shape *	ARCID	GRID_CODE	FROM_NODE	TO_NODE	Shape_Length	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	DrainID
1	Polyline	1	3	3	2	340.918831	103	3	105	3
2	Polyline	2	1	1	2	16035.42856	104	1	105	1
3	Polyline	3	2	2	5	44230.331137	105	2	108	2
4	Polyline	4	5	6	5	26980.161236	106	5	108	5
5	Polyline	5	6	4	7	14677.96644	107	6	121	6
6	Polyline	6	4	5	11	17504.987002	108	4	111	4
I 4	0 > >		(0 out of 51 Sel	ected)	, ,					

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Assign HydroID.

🔨 Assign HydroID	
Input Feature Class/Table Name	Assign HydrolD
DrainageLine	
✓ Overwrite HydroID (optional)	Creates HydroID field if needed and populates it with the next available HydroIDs. HydroIDs are unique within the geodatabase.
• III • III	v
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Specify DrainageLine as the input layer or table and check the Overwrite HydroID checkbox since the HydroID field is already populated. Click OK.

The tool creates the HydroID field if it does not already exist and updates the HydroIDs as appropriate. The tool indicates the range of HydroIDs assigned.

Close this dialog when completed successfully Executing: AssignHydroID DrainageLine OVERWRITE_YES Start Time: Wed Jul 20 13:25:58 2011 Reading Input Parameters Assigning HydroID	Details
Executing: AssignHydroID DrainageLine OVERWRITE_YES Start Time: Wed Jul 20 13:25:58 2011 Reading Input Parameters	~
Start Time: Wed Jul 20 13:25:58 2011 Reading Input Parameters	*
Reading Input Parameters	
ASSIGNING NYOLOD	
The HYDROIDs ranged from 179 to 229.	
Succeeded at Wed Jul 20 13:25:58 2011 (Elapsed Time: 0.00 seconds)	

Note

If the HydroIDs are being overwritten while the table is opened in ArcMap, the table needs to be closed and reopened to view the updated HydroIDs.

▼ 🔁 ▼ 🏪 nageLine		~								
OBJECTID *	Shape *	ARCID	GRID_CODE	FROM_NODE	TO_NODE	Shape_Length	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	DrainID
1	Polyline	1	3	3	2	340.918831	179	3	105	3
2	Polyline	2	1	1	2	16035.42856	180	1	105	1
3	Polyline	3	2	2	5	44230.331137	181	2	108	2
4	Polyline	4	5	6	5	26980.161236	182	5	108	5
5	Polyline	5	6	4	7	14677.96644	183	6	121	6
6	Polyline	6	4	5	11	17504.987002	184	4	111	4
•	0 + +1		(0 out of 51 Sel		· · · · ·				· · · · · ·	

2. Assign UniqueID

This tool assigns unique identifiers to the field specified by the user. The tool works on a selected set or on all features if there is no existing selection. The tool offers the option to overwrite already existing IDs.

- Double-click Attribute Tools > Assign UniqueID.
- Specify DrainageLine as the input layer or table, HydroID as UniqueID field and check the Overwrite HydroID checkbox since the HydroID field is already populated. Click OK.

🔨 Assign UniqueID	
Input Feature Class/Table Name	Assign UniqueID
DrainageLine 🗾 🖻	
UniqueID Field (optional)	Populates specified field with unique identifiers.
HydroID 🗸	
✓ Overwrite UniqueID (optional)	
	•
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool populates the selected UniqueID field (HydroID).

Assign UniqueID	X
Completed	Close
	<< Details
Close this dialog when completed successfully	
Executing: AssignUniqueID DrainageLine HydroID OVERWRITE_YES Start Time: Wed Jul 20 13:33:16 2011	*
Reading Input Parameters	
Assigning UniqueID	
The HydroIDs ranged from 230 to 280. Succeeded at Wed Jul 20 13:33:16 2011 (Elapsed Time: 0.00 seconds)	
Subsected as wear our ro isrostite zorr (Brapsed rimer stor becomds)	-

ainageLir		2									
OBJE		Shape *	ARCID	GRID_CODE	FROM_NODE	TO_NODE	Shape_Length	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	DrainID
	1	Polyline	1	3	3	2	340.918831	230	3	105	3
	2	Polyline	2	1	1	2	16035.42856	231	1	105	1
	3	Polyline	3	2	2	5	44230.331137	232	2	108	2
	4	Polyline	4	5	6	5	26980.161236	233	5	108	5
	5	Polyline	5	6	4	7	14677.96644	234	6	121	6
	6	Polyline	6	4	5	11	17504.987002	235	4	111	4

3. Generate From/To Node for Lines

This tool stores the connectivity between line features by creating and populating the fields From_Node and To_Node.

• Open the Attributes table of DrainageLine, right-click the FROM_NODE field and select Field Calculator... Enter null in the Field Calculator form and click OK to reset the values to null.

Field Calculator					? ×
Parser VB Script Fields: OBJECTID	Python	~ 7	Type:	Functions:	
Shape ARCID GRID_CODE FROM_NODE TO_NODE Shape_Length HydroID GridID		ш	© S <u>t</u> ring © <u>D</u> ate	Atn () Cos () Exp () Fix () Int () Log () Sin () Sqr () Tan ()	
Show Codeblock FROM_NODE = null		Ţ		* / & +	
		<u>C</u> lear	Load	<u>S</u> ave	Help Cancel

• Repeat with the TO_NODE field so that all values in that field are null as well.

•== •	- 🗄 - 🖫	N 🖓	×									
Drain	nageLine											
Т	OBJECTID *	Shape *	ARCID	GRID_CODE	FROM_NODE	TO_NODE *	Shape_Length	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID*	DrainID	Π
	1	Polyline	1	3	<null></null>	<null></null>	340.918831	230	3	-1	3	
	2	Polyline	2	1	<null></null>	<null></null>	16035.42856	231	1	-1	1	
	3	Polyline	3	2	<null></null>	<null></null>	44230.331137	232	2	-1	2	
	4	Polyline	4	5	<null></null>	<null></null>	26980.161236	233	5	-1	5	
	5	Polyline	5	6	<null></null>	<null></null>	14677.96644	234	6	-1	6	
	6	Polyline	6	4	<null></null>	<null></null>	17504.987002	235	4	-1	4	
i.	۰ (,) > >		(0 out of 51 Se	lected)							

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Generate From/To Node for Lines.

• Specify DrainageLine as input Line feature layer for which you want to populate the From_Node/To_Node fields and click OK.

K Generate From/To Node for Lines	
Input Line	Generate From/To Node for Lines
DrainageLine 🗹 🖻	Updates the FROM_NODE and TO_NODE fields for each line feature in the "Line" feature class.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool populates the fields FROM_NODE and TO_NODE in the input Line feature class.

Generate From/To Node for Lines	
Completed	lose
<<	Details
Close this dialog when completed successfully	
Start Time: Wed Jul 20 13:39:23 2011 Populating FROM NODE and TO NODE fields	^
51 features processed and 52 nodes identified.	
If your input table was already opened, you may need to close and reopen i to view the updated FromNode/ToNode values.	t E
Succeeded at Wed Jul 20 13:39:24 2011 (Elapsed Time: 1.00 seconds)	

ainageLin	e											
OBJEC	TID *	Shape *	ARCID	GRID_CODE	FROM_NODE	TO_NODE *	Shape_Length	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID *	DrainID	
	1	Polyline	1	3	1	2	340.918831	230	3	-1	3	
	2	Polyline	2	1	3	2	16035.42856	231	1	-1	1	
	3	Polyline	3	2	2	4	44230.331137	232	2	-1	2	
	4	Polyline	4	5	5	4	26980.161236	233	5	-1	5	
	5	Polyline	5	6	6	7	14677.96644	234	6	-1	6	
	6	Polyline	6	4	4	8	17504.987002	235	4	-1	4	

4. Find Next Downstream Line

This tool finds the next downstream line based on the From_Node and To_Node fields populated with the previous tool, Generate From/To Node for Lines. It creates the NextDownID field if it does not already exist and populates this field with the HydroID of the next downstream line. The tool also

creates a flow split table named by appending _FS to the name of the input Line feature class. This table stores the additional connectivity information for cases when flow splits occur and there is more than one downstream line.

Updating the HydroIDs in Drainage Line with the Assign Hydro tool results in incorrect values being stored in the NextDownID field. NextDownIDs are supposed to represent the HydroIDs of the next downstream lines. These values need to be updated to match the new HydroIDs by using the Find Next Downstream Line tool.

- Double-click Attribute Tools > Find Next Downstream Line.
- Specify Drainage Line as the input Line feature class for which you want to populate NextDownIDs and click OK.

N Find Next Downstream Line	
Input Line	Find Next Downstream Line
DrainageLine	Finds next downstream line, retrieves its HydrolD and stores it in the NextDownID field.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool creates the NextDownID field if it does not already exist and populates it with the HydroID of the next downstream line feature.

										le
								~	27 D OF	• 뢉 • ቤ
										inageLine
DownID* DrainID	NextDownID *	GridID	HydroID	Shape_Length	TO_NODE *	FROM_NODE	GRID_CODE	ARCID	Shape *	OBJECTID *
232 3	232	3	230	340.918831	2	1	3	1	Polyline	1
232 1	232	1	231	16035.42856	2	3	1	2	Polyline	2
235 2	235	2	232	44230.331137	4	2	2	3	Polyline	3
235 5	235	5	233	26980.161236	4	5	5	4	Polyline	4
248 6	248	6	234	14677.96644	7	6	6	5	Polyline	5
238 4	238	4	235	17504.987002	8	4	4	6	Polyline	6
					, ,	ected)	(0 out of 51 Sel) • • • [[
		-				4	4	6	Polyline	6

Note

If the input Line feature class contains flow splits, the additional connectivity information is stored in the flow split table named by appending the suffix "_FS" to the name of the Line feature class (e.g. DrainageLine_FS). The table will be empty if there is no flow splits.

Table		X						
글 • 탑 • 🔓	🗄 🗸 🖶 🖌 🔛 🔂 🕐 🗶							
DrainageLine_FS ×								
OBJECTID *	FEATUREID *	NextDownID *						
14 4	I4 4 0 > >I 🗐 🔲							
(0 out of 0 Select	(0 out of 0 Selected)							
(0 out of 0 Selected) DrainageLine_FS								

5. Find Next Downstream Junction

This tool works on a geometric network junction feature class. You are first going to create a geometric network using Hydro Network Generation tool.

- Add the Catchment and Drainage Point feature class into the map.
- Double-click **Network Tools > Hydro Network Generation.** Keep the default inputs/outputs and click OK to generate the network.

K Hydro Network Generation	
Input Drainage Line	_ ^
DrainageLine	- 🖻
Input Catchment	
Catchment	- 🖻
Input Drainage Point	
DrainagePoint	- 🖻
Network Name	
ArcHydro	
Output Hydro Edge	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\ModelResult\model.mdb\Layers\HydroEdge	
Output Hydro Junction	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \ModelResult \model.mdb \Layers \HydroJuncti	on 🔁
	*
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool generates the HydroJunction junction feature class that participates in the geometric network.

• Double-click **Attribute Tools > Find Next Downstream Junction.** Specify HydroJunction as input Junction feature class and click OK.

K Find Next Downstream Junction	
Input Junction	Find Next Downstream Junction
HydroJunction	Identifies the next downstream junction and populates the field NextDownID with the HydroID of that feature.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool identifies the next downstream junction in the network and populates the field NextDownID with the HydroID of the next junction feature.

Tab	le										×
0 0	• 🗄 • 🏪	🛃 🛛 🚭	×								
Hy	droJunction										×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID *	NextDownID	FType	SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled	JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	
	1	Point	281	282	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	
	2	Point	282	286	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	AH	NONE	_
	3	Point	284	282	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	
	4	Point	286	293	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	AH	NONE	
	5	Point	288	286	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	
	6	Point	290	291	Drainage Inlet	0	0	1	AH	NONE	
	7	Point	291	320	Stream Confluence	1	0	1	AH	NONE	Ŧ
I	∣ ∢ () > >	🔲 🗐 (0 ou	t of 52 Selected)							
H	/droJunction										

6. Calculate Length Downstream for Edges

This tool allows calculating the length downstream for edges in a geometric network.

• Double-click **Attribute Tools > Calculate Length Downstream for Edges** and select HydroEdge as input Edge Feature Classes. Click OK.

🔨 Calculate Length Downstream for Edges		3
Input Edge Feature Classes	Calculate Length Downstream for Edges	*
 ✓ ✓ ✓ HydroEdge ✓ 	The tool Calculate Length Downstream for Edges calculates the length from a network edge to its sink in the network and populates the field LengthDown in that feature class with the calculated value. The user can specify edge feature classes from the current geometric network. The tool will use the field Shape_Length in the selected feature classes to retrieve the length of the features.	
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help	

The tool creates and populates the field LENGHTDOWN for each input edge processed.

c	・ 君・ 🖫 IroEdge										
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	LENGTHDOWN	-
	1	Polyline M	340.918831	283	3	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	244796.058275	
	2	Polyline M	16035.42856	285	1	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	244796.058275	
	3	Polyline M	44230.331137	287	2	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	200565.727138	
	4	Polyline M	26980.161236	289	5	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	200565.727138	
	5	Polyline M	14677.96644	292	6	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	170323.469581	
	6	Polyline M	17504.987002	294	4	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	183060.740137	
	7	Polyline M	3187.203461	296	10	Synthetic Channel	1	1	1	183060.740137	

7. Calculate Length Downstream for Junctions

This tool allows calculating the length downstream for junctions in a geometric network.

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Calculate Length Downstream for Junctions.

🔨 Calculate Length Downstream for Junctions	
Input Junction Feature Classes	Calculate Length Downstream for Junctions
→HydroJunction ✓ ✓ ✓	Arc Hydro Calculate Length Downstream for Junctions
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool creates and populates the field LENGHTDOWN for each input junction processed.

						(
Z 🗄 🗙						
SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled	JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	LENGTHDOWN	
1	0	1	AH	NONE	42158.274862	
1	0	1	AH	NONE	30009.461018	
0	0	1	AH	NONE	38179.528112	
1	0	1	AH	NONE	7872.199128	
0	0	1	AH	NONE	12135.68722	
1	2	1	AH	NONE	0	
				II		•
ы 📃 🗖 🥡) out of 52 Selected)					
	SchemaRole 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 1	SchemaRole AncillaryRole 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0	SchemaRole AncillaryRole Enabled 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1	SchemaRole AncillaryRole Enabled JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC 1 0 1 AH 1 0 1 AH 0 0 1 AH 1 0 1 AH 0 0 1 AH 1 0 1 AH 1 0 1 AH 1 0 1 AH 1 2 1 AH	SchemaRole AncillaryRole Enabled JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC 1 0 1 AH NONE 1 0 1 AH NONE 0 0 1 AH NONE 1 1 2 1 AH NONE	SchemaRole AncillaryRole Enabled JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC LENGTHDOWN 1 0 1 AH NONE 42158.274862 1 0 1 AH NONE 30093.461018 0 0 1 AH NONE 38179.528112 1 0 1 AH NONE 7872.199128 0 0 1 AH NONE 12135.68722 1 2 1 AH NONE 0

8. Store Area Outlets by Drainage Point Proximity

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Store Area Outlets by Drainage Point Proximity.

🔨 Store Area Outlets by Drainage Point Proximity	
Input Area Catchment	Store Area Outlets by Drainage Point
Input Hydro Junction Hydro Junction Input Drainage Point	Learn more about how Store Area Outlets by Drainage Point Proximity Arc Hydro works
DrainagePoint Image: Constraint of the second s	Locates the outlet junctions for a selected set of areas based on the Drainage Point Proximity method.
	v
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

9. Store Area Outlets by Junction Intersect

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Store Area Outlets by Junction Intersect.

🔨 Store Area Outlets by Junction Intersect	
Input Area	Store Area Outlets by Junction Intersect
Catchment 💌 🖻	
Input Hydro Junction	Learn more about how Store Area Outlets by Junction
HydroJunction 🔽 🖻	Intersect Arc Hydro works
Outlet within Area (optional)	Stores identifier of outlet associated to area using the Junction Intersect method.
☑ Outlet near Boundary (optional)	
Search Tolerance (optional)	
100 Meters -	
Compare Upstream Downstream Edges (optional)	
Check Edges within Area (optional)	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	v
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

10. Store Area Outlets by Next Downstream Area

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Store Area Outlets by Next Downstream Area.

🔨 Store Area Outlets by Next Downstream Area	
Input Area	Store Area Outlets by Next Downstream Area
	Learn more about how Store Area Outlets by Next Downstream Area Arc Hydro works
-	Identifies outlet of next downstream area based on Next Downstream Area method.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

11. Compute Global Parameters

This tool computes the specified characteristics for selected watershed features. It is setup to work for a global environment. The tool identifies the location of the data required to characterize each selected watershed by using a cataloging unit layer with the Name field. This global tool can also be used in a standard "local" environment by setting up a cataloging unit polygon feature class with one feature covering the extent of the data. This allows the data to reside on the disk instead of having to add it into the map (when using the tool in ArcMap) and also allows the tool to be used in ArcCatalog since it does not depend on the map.

You are going to setup the tool to work with your local data.

Compute Global Parameters	
Click error and warning icons for more information	Compute Global Parameters
🚫 Input Global Watershed	
GlobalWatershed 🗾 🔁	Computes selected parameters for global
💫 Input Cataloging Unit Polygon	watersheds.
CUPolygon 🗹 🖻	
🖕 Global Data Path	
Input Parameters	
AREA2MI A	
RELIEFFT E	
ELEVFT	
ELEVMAXFT	
ELEVMINFT	
SLPPCT	
SLPPCT30	
SLPPCT30N	
FORESTPCT	
۰	
Select All Unselect All Add Value	
· · ·	Ψ
OK Cancel Environments <<< Hide Help	Tool Help

• Double-click Attribute Tools > Compute Global Parameters.

The tool requires as input the Global Watershed feature class that needs to be characterized and the cataloging unit polygon that allows identifying the location of the supporting data on the disk. The Global Data Path must be set to the location of the parent directory under which the supporting data directory is located. The name of the subdirectory is read from the Name field in the Cataloging Unit Polygon feature class.

You are going to characterize the Catchment features corresponding to the Drainage Line features in the map.

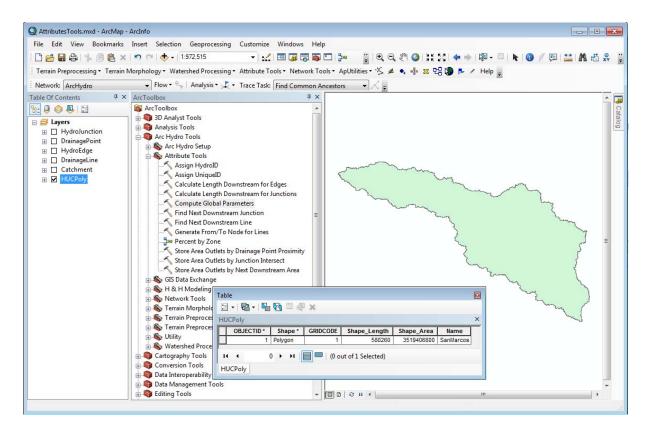
• Click Cancel to close the tool and open the Attributes table of Catchment.

c	hment								
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	GRIDCODE	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	JunctionID *
	1	Polygon	1	78780	138075300.000002	1	1	2	282
	2	Polygon	2	120840	263818800.000002	2	2	4	286
	3	Polygon	3	36720	36160200	3	3	2	282
	4	Polygon	4	79260	95192100	4	4	8	293
	5	Polygon	5	105300	178023600	5	5	4	286
	6	Polygon	6	73380	98660700.000002	6	6	7	291

The supporting data for this example is located in the directory DataGP\GlobalParams.



• Browse to the Global.gdb database in this location and add the Cataloging Unit Polygon layer HUCPoly into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.



This polygon layer contains one polygon feature that covers the entire study area (San Marcos). This layer was created by converting the input elevation raster (elev_cm) into a grid of value 1, converting this grid into a polygon feature class and dissolving the resulting polygon features based on the GridID field (all GridIDs were equal to 1). Then the Name field was added and populated with "SanMarcos", which is the name of the subdirectory under the Global location.

- Select a few features in the Catchment feature class (e.g. the first 4 features in the table) as the tool works on a selected set. The tool will process all features if there is no selected set.
- Double-click Attribute Tools > Compute Global Parameters. Select Catchment as Input Global Watershed, HUCPoly as Input Cataloging Unit Polygon and use the DataGP\GlobalParams directory as Global Data Path.

🔨 Compute Global Parameters	
Input Global Watershed	Compute Global Parameters
Catchment 🗾 🖻	
Input Cataloging Unit Polygon	Computes selected parameters for global
HUCPoly 🗾 🖻	watersheds.
Global Data Path	
C:\Tutorial\DataGP\GlobalParams	
Input Parameters	
AREA2MI	
RELIEFFT E	
V ELEVFT	
SLPPCT30	
SLPPCT30N	
FORESTPCT T	
4 III	
Select All Unselect All Add Value	
-	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Select AREA2MI, ELEVFT and CENTROIDY as Input Parameters and click OK.

The tool fails with the following messages:

Compute Global Parameters
Completed
< > Details
Close this dialog when completed successfully
Executing: ComputeGlobalParameters Catchment HUCPoly C:\Tutorial\DataGP \GlobalParams AREA2MI;ELEVFT;CENTROIDY Start Time: Wed Jul 20 15:19:30 2011 DrainID does not exist for GlobalWatershed! GlobalWshd does not exist for GlobalWatershed! RELATEDOIDS does not exist for GlobalWatershed!
Performing global parameters computation
OID: 1 Raster dataset DEM not found. Checking corresponding ApLayer. Raster not found for ApLayer RawDEM. Parameter ELEVFT cannot be computed. OID: 2
Raster dataset DEM not found. Checking corresponding ApLayer. Raster not found for ApLayer RawDEM. Parameter ELEVFT cannot be computed. OID: 3
Raster dataset DEM not found. Checking corresponding ApLayer. Raster not found for ApLayer RawDEM. Parameter ELEVFT cannot be computed. OID: 4
Raster dataset DEM not found. Checking corresponding ApLayer. Raster not found for ApLayer RawDEM. Parameter ELEVFT cannot be computed. Succeeded at Wed Jul 20 15:19:32 2011 (Elapsed Time: 2.00 seconds)

The messages about missing fields are only warning. The tool does not require these fields to proceed.

The tool successfully computes and populates the parameters AREA2MI and CENTROIDY. It also generates the centroid point features and stores them in the new CENTROID feature class.

Ta	ble							X		
į										
C	atchment							×		
	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	JunctionID *	AREA2MI	ELEVFT	CENTROIDY			
	• 1	1	2	282	53.316367	<null></null>	783606.959463			
	2	2	4	286	101.870936	<null></null>	783244.51834			
	3	3	2	282	13.962892	<null></null>	779012.481955			
	4	4	8	293	36.757457	<null></null>	777035.776551			
	t					III		Þ		
	14 4	1 +	M 📃 🔜 (4	out of 51 Selected	I)					
C	atchment									

] • 君 • ntroid	F	X 🖓 X			
٦	SHAPE *	OID *	HydroID	DrainID	CENTROIDX	CENTROIDY
۲	Point	1	384	1	-251180.821095	783606.959463
	Point	2	385	2	-231351.746653	783244.51834
	Point	3	386	3	-244279.526358	779012.481955
	Point	4	387	4	-214370.653594	777035.776551
ŀ	• •	1 ▶	►I 📃 🗖	■ (0 out of	f 4 Selected)	



The parameter ELEVFT is not computed. The following message is displayed for each feature:

OID: 1

Raster dataset DEM not found. Checking corresponding ApLayer.

Raster not found for ApLayer RawDEM. Parameter ELEVFT cannot be computed.

The computation failed because the function could not find the input elevation grid DEM in the input directory. The name of the elevation grid needs to be set to elev_cm instead of DEM in the XML configuration associated to the map.

- Select ApUtilities > XML Manager to open the active configuration.
- Browse to the node *HydroConfig\ProgParams\ApFunctions\ApFunction(WshParams)\ApFields\ApField(ELEVFT) \ApLayers\ApLayer(RawDEM,DEM).* Right-click this node and select EditAttributes. Change Name from DEM to elev_cm and click OK. Close the form and save the map.

Attributes of ApLa	iyer 🗖 🗖 💌
FIELD	VALUE
Name	elev_cm
TagName	RawDEM
AliasName	RawDEM
Desc	Raw DEM
FeatureType	1
ShapeType	1
LayerType	1
TargetLocation	
TargetDataset	
ForInput	1
	ОК

• Double-click Compute Global Parameters and compute ELEVFT.

The tool computes the ELEVFT parameter using the elev_cm grid and populates the corresponding field in the attributes table of Catchment.

Tab	le							
0	- ª-	🔓 🌄 🛙	3 🚭 🗙 🖓					
Cat	tchment							×
Π	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	JunctionID *	AREA2MI	ELEVFT	CENTROIDY	
F	1	1	2	282	53.316367	1753.248886	783606.959463	
	2	2	4	286	101.870936	1414.868867	783244.51834	
	3	3	2	282	13.962892	1683.97812	779012.481955	
	4	4	8	293	36.757457	1161.482167	777035.776551	
•						III		F.
н	•	1 >	▶1 📄 🔜 (4	out of 51 Selected)			
Ca	tchment							

Detailed information on how to setup additional parameters that can be computed with this tool can be found in the document "Local Parameters Configuration". In particular, you can configure the tool to work with your models. The model Percent by Zone is an example of model connected to the tool – it allows computing the percent of the area in the input watershed falling into each classification of the grid (E.g. percent landuse).

Note

You need to allow overwriting of the outputs of the geoprocessing functions to use this model (Geoprocessing > Geoprocessing Options...).

🔨 Compute Global Parameters	
Input Global Watershed	Input Parameters
Catchment 💌 🖻	
Input Cataloging Unit Polygon	List of parameters that can be computed.
HUCPoly	
Global Data Path	
C: \Tutorial \DataGP \GlobalParams	
Input Parameters	
ELEV85FT	
ELEV10FT3D	
ELEV85FT3D	
MFPSLP1085FM	
NHDPOINT	
OPENWATER	
Select All Unselect All Add Value	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Double-click Compute Global Parameters and compute the parameter LUSE_NLCD.

The tool computes predefined landuse percentages and store their values in new fields created in the attributes table of Catchment.

Ta	Table 🛛									
0	$\exists \cdot \textcircled{l} \bullet \operatornamewithlimits{l} \biguplus{l} \textcircled{l} \textcircled{l} @ (\land) = (\operatornamewithlimits{l} \biguplus{l} @ (\land)) $									
Ci	atchment									×
Г	WATER_OPEN	WATER_SNOW	DEV_OPEN	DEV_LOW	DEV_MEDIUM	DEV_HIGH	BARREN_LAND	BARREN_SHORE	FOREST_DCD	FOREST_EVG
F	0.248656	0	0.046337	0.000653	0	0	0.006526	0	9.403227	17.479638
	0.222697	0	1.443088	0.531466	0.163265	0.039279	0.014345	0	9.93869	22.598924
	0	0	0	0.004981	0	0	0	0	8.109589	17.574097
	0.500715	0	0.015144	0.232847	0.013251	0	0.004733	0	11.664095	47.192117
	1				III					F.
	IA A	1 🔸 🔰 🗎	(4 out o	f 51 Selected)					
C	atchment									

• Save and close the map.

Watershed Processing

Watershed Processing
 Batch Global Watershed Delineation
 Batch Subwatershed Delineation
 Batch Watershed Delineation
 Batch Watershed Delineation for Polygons
 Construct 3D Line
 Delineate from Multiple Inlets and Outlets
 Drainage Area Centroid
 Flow Path Parameters from 3D Line
 Flow Path Parameters from 3D Line
 Interactive Delineation
 Longest Flow Path
 Smooth 3D Line

You will use the data from the DataGP\ModelResult folder to test these tools as well.

- Copy the contents of the DataGP\ModelResult into a new directory (e.g. WatershedProcessing).
- Open a new map and save it as WatershedProcessing.mxd for example.
- Reset the target locations to point to the data you just copied using Arc Hydro Setup > Set Target Locations.

Not Target Locations			x
Application Name HydroConfig Input Map Name Layers Input Raster Location Workspace C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing Input Vector Location Workspace C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb	*	Set Target Locations Creates the specified raster and target vector locations and set them as default locations for the Arc Hydro tools in ArcMap by editing the active configuration loaded in memory.	*
	Ŧ		Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

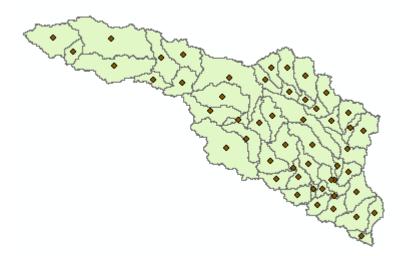
1. Drainage Area Centroid

This tool generates the Centroid associated to the input Drainage Area features. It works on the selected set or on all features if there is no selection

- Add the Catchment feature class into the map.
- Double-click Watershed Processing > Drainage Area Centroid.
- Specify Catchment as Input Drainage Area and keep the default name for the output.

🔨 Drainage Area Centroid	
Input Drainage Area	
Catchment 🗾 🔁	L
Output Centroid	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\Centroid	L
	1
-	
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>	

The tool generates the Centroid features associated to each input area feature and stores them in the output Centroid feature class. The DrainID field in the Centroid features is the HydroID of the associated Area.



	able 🛛 🛛 🔁 🕶 🔀							
Ce	ntroid				×			
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	DrainID	HydroID				
	1	Point	1	179				
	2	Point	2	180				
	3	Point	3	181				
	4	Point	4	182	-			
ŀ	• • 5:	L ► ►I	0)	out of 51 Sel	ected)			
C	entroid							

2. Longest Flow Path

This tool generates the Longest Flow Path associated to the input Drainage Area features. It works on the selected set or on all features if there is no selection

- Add the flow direction grid (fdr) into the map.
- Double-click Watershed Processing > Longest Flow Path.
- Specify Catchment as Input Drainage Area, fdr as Input Flow Direction Grid and keep the default name for the output. Click OK.

🔨 Longest Flow Path
Input Drainage Area
Catchment 🗾 🔁
Input Flow Direction Grid
fdr 🔽 🔁
Output Longest Flow Path
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\LongestFlowPath
·
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

The tool generates the Longest Flow Path features associated to each input area feature and stores them in the output LongestFlowPath feature class.

Table
🗄 • 🖶 • 🖫 🌄 🖸 🚭 🗙
LongestFlowPath

OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	
1	Polyline	27815.714267	230	1	
2	Polyline	53436.02269	231	2	
3	Polyline	13002.930727	232	3	
4	Polyline	29791.998898	233	4	

3. Construct 3D Line

This tool generates 3D Lines by retrieving the elevations along 2D Lines from an input DEM.

- Add the elevation grid elev_cm into the map.
- Double-click Watershed Processing > Construct 3D Line.
- Specify LongestFlowPath as Input Line 2 and elev_cm as Input Raw DEM. Rename the output LFP3D and click OK.

Construct 3D Line	- • ×
Input Line 2D	^
LongestFlowPath	- 🖻
Input Raw DEM	
elev_cm	- 🖻
Output Line 3D	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\LFP3D	2
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool generates the output 3D line features. The field Line2DID in the 3D lines stores the HydroID of the associated 2D Line feature.

Tab	ole						X
0] • 🔁 • 🏪	🛃 🛛 📲	×				
LF	P3D						×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	Line2DID	DrainID	-
	1	Polyline Z	27815.714267	281	230	1	
	2	Polyline Z	53436.02269	282	231	2	
	3	Polyline Z	13002.930727	283	232	3	
	4	Polyline Z	29791.998898	284	233	4	Ŧ
	4 4 4: FP3D	L > >1	0 out of 51 🔲 🗐	Selected)			

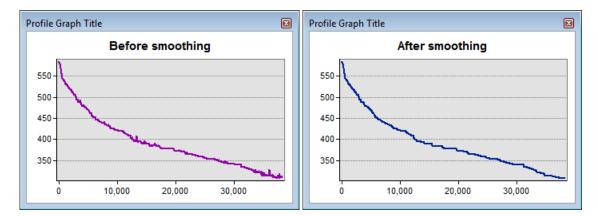
4. Smooth 3D Line

This tool ensures that elevations along 3D Lines go down in the digitized direction of the lines.

- Double-click Watershed Processing > Construct 3D Line.
- Specify LFP3D as Input Line 3D feature class and rename the output SmoothLFP3D. Click OK.

🔨 Smooth 3D Line
Input Line 3D
LFP3D 🔽 🔁
Output Smooth Line 3D
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \WatershedProcessing \model.mdb \Layers \SmoothLFP3D
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

The tool edits the elevations along each line so that the elevations go down along the digitized direction of the features.



The field Line3DID stores the HydroID of the input 3D Line associated to the smoothed line.

_] • 碧 • �� noothLFP3D	AA II On	×					>
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Line3DID	HydroID	Line2DID	DrainID	1
	1	Polyline Z	27815.714267	281	332	230	1	
	2	Polyline Z	53436.02269	282	333	231	2	
	3	Polyline Z	13002.930727	283	334	232	3	
	4	Polyline Z	29791.998898	284	335	233	4	-
ŀ	• • 5: moothLFP3D	1 > >	🔲 🗌 (0 out of 51	Selected)				

5. Flow Path Parameters from 2D Line

This tool computes slope, length and elevation parameters for 2D longest flow path lines by extracting elevations from an input DEM.

- Double-click Watershed Processing > Flow Path Parameters from 2D Line.
- Specify LongestFlowPath as Input Longest Flow Path and elev_cm as input Raw DEM. Keep the default name for the output Slp1085Point feature class and click OK.

🔨 Flow Path Parameters from 2D Line	×
Input Longest Flow Path	^
LongestFlowPath 💌 🖻	
Input Raw DEM	
elev_cm 🗾 🖻	
Output Slope 1085 Point	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \WatershedProcessing \model.mdb \Layers \Slp 1085Point	-
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>	

The tool computes the Length of the line in miles, its slope in Feet per mile and the dimensionless slope, its slope 10-85 in miles and dimensionless, and the elevation at its from point, to point and at the points located at 10% and 85% of the length along the line starting from the downstream end.

:=] ▼ 閏 ▼ ngestFlowPa	🍡 🔂 🗹	⊕ ^{[[} ×									×
T	HydroID	DrainID	LengthMi	SIpFM	SIp1085FM	Slp	Slp1085	ElevUP	ElevDS	Elev10	Elev85	-
Þ	230	1	17.284727	36.25007	27.87328	0.006866	0.005279	613.55	422.58	432.69	542.82	
Ĩ	231	2	33.205225	25.112498	15.229876	0.004756	0.002884	568.71	314.56	321.02	436.62	
	232	3	8.080041	66.760703	44.975461	0.012644	0.008518	588.93	424.52	432.25	515.32	
	233	4	18.512793	41.115308	24.40086	0.007787	0.004621	500.19	268.2	277.54	380.8	+
₹.											•	
н	• •	1 + +		(0 out of 51	Selected)							

The tool generates the 10-85 points associated to the lines and stores their elevation. The DrainID field stores the HydroID of the Drainage Area (e.g. Catchment) associated to the input line.

Tab	lle] • 묩 • ┗	F	×				X
Slp	1085Point						×
Π	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	DrainID	Name	Elev	
	1	Point Z	383	1	10PNT	432.69	
	2	Point Z	384	1	85PNT	542.82	
	3	Point Z	385	2	10PNT	321.02	
	4	Point Z	386	2	85PNT	436.62	÷
I · Slj	• • 78 p1085Point	8 ▶ ▶		out of 102 S	elected)		

6. Flow Path Parameters from 3D Line

This tool computes slope, length and elevation parameters for 3D longest flow path lines by extracting elevations from the lines.

- Double-click Watershed Processing > Flow Path Parameters from 3D Line.
- Specify LFP3D as Input Longest Flow Path 3D. Rename the output Slp1085Point3D and click OK.

Flow Path Parameters from 3D Line
Input Longest Flow Path 3D
LFP3D 💌 🖻
Output Slope 1085 Point
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\Slp1085Point3D
-
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

The tool computes the Length of the line in miles, its slope in Feet per mile and the dimensionless slope, its slope 10-85 in miles and dimensionless, and the elevation at its from point, to point and at the points located at 10% and 85% of the length along the line starting from the downstream end.

Tab	ole														Đ
0	· ₽	🏪 🌄 🖸 📲 🗙													
LF	P3D)
Γ	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	Line2DID	DrainID	LengthMi	SIpFM	SIp1085FM	Slp	SIp1085	ElevUP	ElevDS	Elev10	Elev85	1-
►	Polyline Z	27815.714267	281	230	1	17.284727	36.25007	27.882553	0.006866	0.005281	613.55	422.58	432.715234	542.881873	10
	Polyline Z	53436.02269	282	231	2	33.205225	25.112498	15.181927	0.004756	0.002875	568.71	314.56	320.953295	436.189344	1
	Polyline Z	13002.930727	283	232	3	8.080041	66.760703	44.825257	0.012644	0.00849	588.93	424.52	432.214167	515.00674	1
	Polyline Z	29791.998898	284	233	4	18.512793	41.115308	24.386831	0.007787	0.004619	500.19	268.2	277.500423	380.701056] •
•								1						•	
1	• •	1 → → 🔲	0 out	of 51 Selected	D										
			(0 0 0 0 0	or or occered	·										
11	FP3D														

The tool generates the 10-85 points associated to the lines and stores their elevation. The DrainID field stores the HydroID of the Drainage Area (e.g. Catchment) associated to the input line.

Slp1	.085Point3D	2					×
Т	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	DrainID	Name	Elev	
۶Ľ	1	Point Z	485	1	10PNT	432.715234	
	2	Point Z	486	1	85PNT	542.881873	
	3	Point Z	487	2	10PNT	320.953295	
	4	Point Z	488	2	85PNT	436.189344	
	5	Point Z	489	3	10PNT	432.214167	Ŧ

7. Batch Watershed Delineation

This tool allows performing batch watershed delineations based on an input Batch Point feature class.

• Add the AdjointCatchment feature class and str grid into the map.

You first need to create the Batch Point feature class and add a few points to delineate.

• On the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar, click the Batch Point Generation tool (28) and specify Batch Point as Batch Point feature class. Click OK.

🔮 Batch Point	Generation	×
Batch Point		
	OK <u>H</u> elp <u>C</u> ancel	

• Click on the map at the location where you want to create the first point to delineate and enter the name and description of the point and whether to snap it (1 – snap, 0 – do not snap). Click OK to create the point.

🔮 Batch Point G	eneration
-Point Definition	
Name:	Name 1
Description:	Description 1
BatchDone:	0
SnapOn	1
Туре	Outlet 💌
ОК	Help Cancel

• Click again on the map to create a second point.

🔮 Batch Point Ge	eneration 💽
Point Definition	
Name:	Name 2
Description:	Description 2
BatchDone:	0 •
SnapOn	1
Туре	Outlet 💌
ОК	Help Cancel

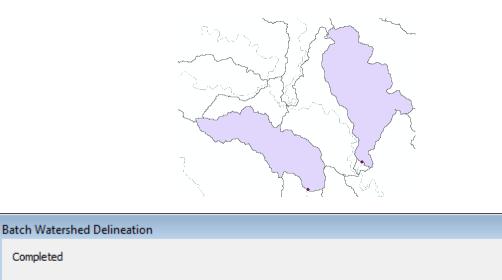
Ta	ıb	le								X
ļ	0	- B	•	-		1 4 1	×			
В	a	tchPoint								×
Г		Shape	*	OID) *	Name	Descript	BatchDone	SnapOn	SrcType
IF	•	Point			1	Name 1	Description 1	0	1	0
		Point			2	Name 2	Description 2	0	1	0
	I. Ba	• • atchPoint	t	1	×	H	🔲 🗏 (0 out of 2	2 Selected)		

- Double-click Watershed Processing > Batch Watershed Delineation.
- Select the inputs/outputs as shown below and click OK to perform the delineations.

Input Batch Point	
BatchPoint	I 🖻
Input Flow Direction Grid	
fdr	I 🖻
Input Stream Grid	
str	
Input Snap Stream Grid (optional)	_
str	
Input Catchment	
Catchment	
Input Adjoint Catchment	
AdjointCatchment	
Clear Existing Features (optional)	_
Output Watershed	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \WatershedProcessing \model.mdb \Layers \Watershed	6
Output Watershed Point	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \WatershedProcessing \model.mdb \Layers \WatershedPoint	t 📔

The tool delineates watersheds for the input batch point features.

Completed



Close

<< Details

Close this dialog when completed successfully	
Executing: BatchWatershedDelineation BatchPoint fdr str str	*
Catchment AdjointCatchment CLEARFEATURES_NO C:\Tutorial\Results	
\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\Watershed C:\Tutorial	
\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers	
\WatershedPoint	
Start Time: Thu Jul 21 07:24:34 2011	
Delineating watershed for batchpoint 1 of 2.	
Delineating watershed for batchpoint 2 of 2.	
2 watershed(s) successfully delineated.	
Succeeded at Thu Jul 21 07:24:59 2011 (Elapsed Time: 25.00 seconds)	
	-

The DrainID field in the WatershedPoint feature class stores the HydroID of the associated Watershed.

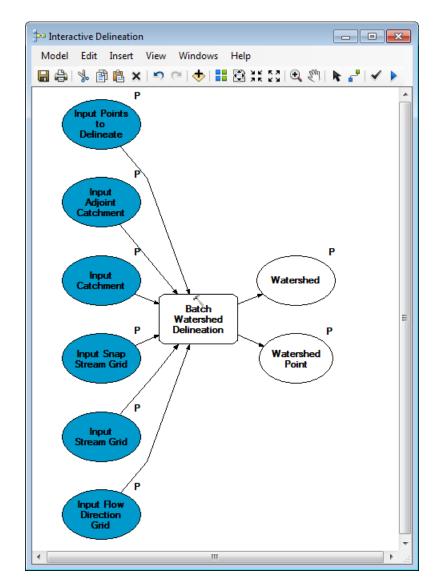
Tab	le							×
🗄 🗝 🖶 📲 🌄 🖾 🐠 🗙								
Wa	tershedPoin	t						x
	OBJECTID	*	Shape *	HydroID	DrainID	Name	Descript	
F		1	Point	588	587	Name 1	Description 1	
		2	Point	590	589	Name 2	Description 2	
• [W	• • atershedPoir		1 🕨 🖬 📗	— (0	out of 2 Sele	cted)		

	Table									
🗄 • 🖶 • 🖫 🚱 🖾 💷 🗙										
Watershed										
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	Name				
E	1	Polygon	53580	50052600.000003	587	Name 1				
	2	Polygon	61380	65790000.000001	589	Name 2				

8. Interactive Delineation

This model allows performing one or many watershed delineation associated to the input points provided by clicking from the map or by using an input point feature class. It uses the Batch Watershed Delineation tool.

• Right-click the model Interactive Delineation and select Edit.



- Close the model.
- Double-click Watershed Processing > Interactive Delineation.
- Select fdr, str, Catchment, AdjointCatchment as input and rename the outputs WatershedInt and WatershedPointInt. The outputs use the current Arc Hydro vector location by default. Note that outputs only shows the name of the feature classes.

Input P	oints to Delineate					
A	dd features interactive	ły:				
	Name	Descript	Snap	BatchDone	SrcType	÷.
-						\mathbf{X}
_						I
•					•	Ľ
<u></u>	se features from:					
					-	<u>6</u>
Input F	low Direction Grid					
	IOW DIRECTORI GITU					
_	low birection drid					7 🖂
Fdr						•
Fdr Input S	Stream Grid				-	
Fdr Input S str	Stream Grid	ional)			2	- 🖻
Fdr Input S str		ional)				
Fdr Input S str Input S str	Stream Grid	ional)				
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C	Stream Grid Snap Stream Grid (opti	ional)			- - - -	
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C Catch	Stream Grid Snap Stream Grid (opti Catchment	ional)			2	
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C Catch Input A	Stream Grid Snap Stream Grid (opti Catchment hment	ional)				
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C Catch Input A Adjoi Waters	Stream Grid Snap Stream Grid (opti Catchment hment Adjoint Catchment intCatchment shed	ional)			-	
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C Catch Input A Adjoi Waters Waters	Gtream Grid Gnap Stream Grid (opti Catchment Adjoint Catchment IntCatchment Shed rshedInt	ional)			-	
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C Catch Input A Adjoi Waters Waters	Stream Grid Gnap Stream Grid (opti Catchment Adjoint Catchment IntCatchment Shed rshedInt shedPoint	ional)			-	
Fdr Input S str Input S str Input C Catch Input A Adjoi Waters Waters	Gtream Grid Gnap Stream Grid (opti Catchment Adjoint Catchment IntCatchment Shed rshedInt	ional)			-	
Fdr Input S str Input S Str Input C Catch Input A Adjoi Waters Waters	Stream Grid Gnap Stream Grid (opti Catchment Adjoint Catchment IntCatchment Shed rshedInt shedPoint	ional)			-	

• Click Add feature and then click on the map at the location where you want to perform a delineation.

• A	Add features intera	ctively:			
	Name	Descript	Snap	BatchDone	SrcType
					Add featu
-					1
•					•

• Enter a name and description for your point as well as whether to perform snapping (1) or not (1). Click OK to perform the delineation.

A	dd features interactiv	ely:				
	Name	Descript	Snap	BatchDone	SrcType	1
1	Interactive 1	Interactive Waters	1			
						×
						1
						I
•					•	

The model generates the watershed and watershed point associated to the specified input point.

Table								
🔚 📲 📲 🌄 🖾 🐠 🗙								
Watersh	edPointInt	t					×	
OE	JECTID *	Shape *	HydrolD	DrainID	Name	Descript		
	1	Point	592	591	Interactive 1	Interactive Watershed 1		

Tab	le						X		
*= *=	🗄 • 🖶 • 🖷 🚱 🖾 🐠 🗙								
Wa	WatershedInt								
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	Name			
	1 Polygon					1			

9. Batch Subwatershed Delineation

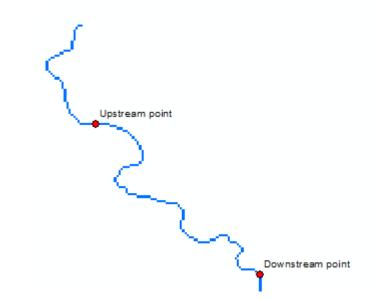
This tool allows generating subwatersheds associated to input batch points.

• Click the Batch Point Generation tool (\boxtimes) on the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar.

🔮 Batch Point	: Generation	×
Batch Point	{5A022467-6259-49D7-9D2A-BE26F95DE240}	
	OK Help Cancel	

Note that the Input Batch Point is set to the identifier of the in memory batch point used by the Interactive Delineation tool. This input needs to be reset to a real Batch Point feature class.

- Enter BatchPointSub for the BatchPoint feature class and click OK.
- Click on the map and create 2 points on the same stream segment.



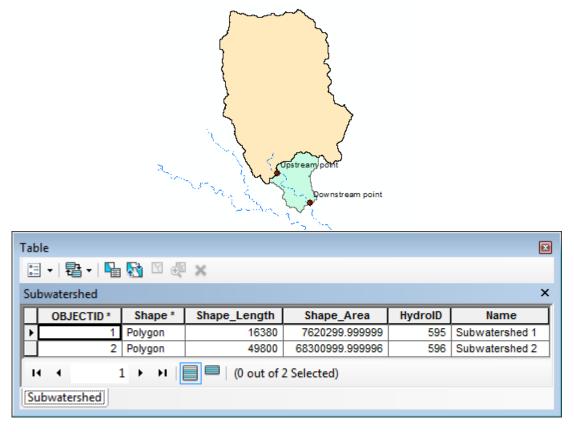
0 0	- ₽-	-	Z 🐨 🗙				
3a	tchPointSub)					2
	Shape *	OID *	Name	Descript	BatchDone	SnapOn	SrcType
۲	Point	1	Subwatershed 1	Downstream point	0	1	0
	Point	2	Subwatershed 2	Upstream point	0	1	0
ŀ	4 4	1 +	ы 📃 🗖 (0	out of 2 Selected)			

- Double-click Watershed Processing > Batch Subwatershed Delineation.
- Keep the default for the inputs/outputs and click OK.

K Batch Subwatershed Delineation	• 🗙
Input Batch Point	^
BatchPointSub 🔻	2
Input Flow Direction Grid	
fdr 🗸	2
Input Stream Grid	
str 🗸	2
Output Subwatershed	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\Subwatershed	2
Output Subwatershed Point	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\SubwatershedPoint	2
OK Cancel Environments Show H	Help >>

The tool generates the subwatersheds associate to the input points and generates the output Subwatershed and SunwatershedPoint feature classes.

Batch Subwatershed Delineation	×
Completed	וכ
<< Details	5
Close this dialog when completed successfully	
Performing delineation Converting the subwatershed grid into polygons	<u>^</u>
Dissolving subwatershed polygons	
Assigning HydroIDs to subwatershed features Populating attributes	
Updating BatchDone in input Batch Point feature class Deleting Grid Code field in subwatershed feature class	
Batch subwatershed delineation successfully completed!	=
2 point(s) processed, 0 failed and 0 skipped (BatchDone<>0). Succeeded at Thu Jul 21 08:06:15 2011 (Elapsed Time: 12.00 seconds)	
	Ŧ



Tab							X	
0	🗄 - 🖶 - 🖫 🚱 🖾 🐗 🗙							
Su	bwatershedPoin	t					×	
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	DrainID	Name	Descript	Τ	
	1	Point	593	595	Subwatershed 1	Downstream point		
		FUIIL	000					
Ľ	2	Point	594	596	Subwatershed 2	Upstream point		

10. Batch Watershed Delineation for Polygons

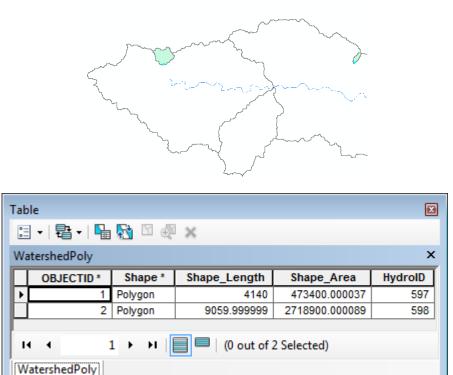
This tool allows generating watersheds draining into polygon features.

- Add the NHDWaterbody feature class from the model.mdb geodatabase.
- Select the first 2 features in the NHDWaterbody feature class.
- Double-click Watershed Processing > Batch Watershed Delineation for Polygons.

• Select NHDWaterbody as input Batch Polygon, fdr as input Flow Direction Grid and keep the default name for the output. Click OK.

Batch Watershed Delineation for Polygons		×
Input Batch Polygon		^
NHDWaterbody	- 🖻	
Input Flow Direction Grid		
fdr	- 🖻	
Output Watershed		
$\label{eq:c:Tutorial} \end{tabular} C: \tabular \end{tabular} C: \tabular \end{tabular} Watershed \end{tabular} Poly tab$	2	
		-
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>	

The tool generates a watershed for each selected polygon.



The tool creates the field BatchDone in the input polygon feature class and populates it with 1 to indicate that the feature has already been processed.

Tab	le						
= - 🖶 - 🖳 🌄 🖸 🚭 🗙							
NH	IDWaterbod	у				х	
\Box	HYDROID	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	DrainID	BatchDone		
	3882	438.724674	13607.354622	597	1		
	3883	357.808188	7450.86067	598	1		
	3884	759.075263	30788.773156	<null></null>	<null></null>		
	3885	489.784212	11594.421698	<null></null>	<null></null>	Ŧ	
₹					III ►		
ŀ	• •	1 🕨 🔰 📘	🔲 (2 out of 1	71 Selected)			
N	HDWaterboo	dy					

11. Delineate from Multiple Inlets and Outlets

This tool allows generating watersheds associated to multiple inlets and outlets.

 Click the Batch Point Generation tool (28) on the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar and enter BatchPointSource as input Batch Point feature class.

🔮 Batch Point (Generation 🛛 💌
Batch Point	BatchPointSource
<u><u>o</u>k</u>	Help Cancel

• Create inlets and outlets along the same stream segment as shown below.

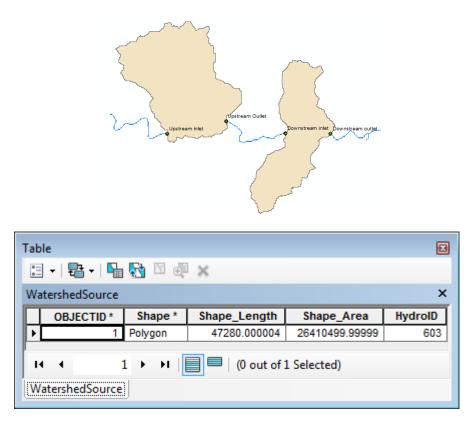


🔮 Batch Point G	Generation	🔮 Batch Point G	ieneration 💌
Point Definition		Point Definition	
Name:	Upstream inlet	Name:	Upstream outlet
Description:	Inlet 1	Description:	Outlet 1
BatchDone:	0 🔹	BatchDone:	0 🔹
SnapOn	1	SnapOn	1
Туре	Inlet 💌	Туре	Outlet
ОК	Help Cancel	ОК	Help Cancel
🔮 Batch Point G	Generation	🔮 Batch Point G	ieneration
Point Definition		Point Definition	
Name:	Downstream inlet	Name:	Downstream outlet
Description:	Inlet 2	Description:	Outlet 2
BatchDone:	0	BatchDone:	0 🔹
SnapOn	1 •	SnapOn	1 •
Туре	Inlet -	Туре	Outlet 🗸

- Double-click Watershed Processing > Delineate from Multiple Inlets and Outlets.
- Select BatchPointSource as input Point Source as well as fdr and str as Flow Direction Grid and Stream Grid respectively. Rename the outputs WatershedSource and WatershedPointSource and click OK.

Delineate from Multiple Inlets and Outlets	×
Input Point Source	
BatchPointSource 🗹 🚰	
Input Flow Direction Grid	
fdr 💌 🖻	
Input Stream Grid	
str 🔽 🖻	
Output Watershed	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\model.mdb\Layers\WatershedSource	
Output Watershed Point	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \WatershedProcessing \model.mdb \Layers \WatershedPointSource	
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >	>

The tool generate one watershed for the combined inlets and outlets in the input Point Source feature class.



The tool copies the input points into the WatershedPointSource feature class. The field DrainID stores the HydroID of the associated watershed. The field ONRIVER indicates whether the input point was initially on the stream grid.

III ▼ 電 ▼ 唱 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1								
Τ	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	DrainID	Name	Descript	SrcType	ONRIVER
۶Ī	1	Point	599	603	Upstream inlet	Inlet 1	1	1
T	2	Point	600	603	Upstream Outlet	Outlet 1	0	1
	3	Point	601	603	Downstream inlet	Inlet 2	1	0
	4	Point	602	603	Downstream outlet	Outlet 2	0	0
ы	•	1 🕨 🖬 📗		out of 4 Sele				

Note

The tool does not update the BatchDone field in the input Point Source and does not use this field to find the input points to use for the delineation.

• Save and close the map.

12. Batch Global Watershed Delineation

This tool allows generating global watersheds in batch mode. You are going to use the data from \DataGP\GlobalParams to test this tool.

- Copy the \DataGP\Global directory under your WatershedProcessing directory.
- Open a new map document and save it under the WatershedProcessing directory as WatershedGlobal.mxd.
- Browse to the geodatabase Global.mdb and add the hucpoly, streams and huc_net_junctions feature classes into ArcMap.

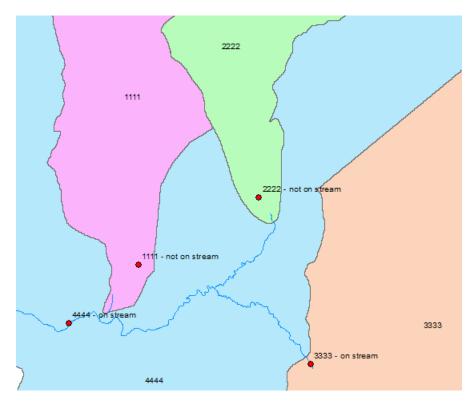
Catalog	÷	×
← ▼ ∲ 🏠 🟠 🎆 ▼ 😫 🕲		
Location: 🧻 global.mdb		•
😑 🙀 Home - GPTools\WatershedProcessing		
🖃 🚞 Global		
H 🔁 1111		
H 🔁 2222		
H 🛅 3333		
⊞ 4444		
🗄 🧮 bc_dir		
🗆 🔲 global		
🗆 🖶 Layers		
🛁 huc_net		
huc_net_Junctions		
l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l		
🛨 streams		
HYDROIDTABLE		
E Cayers		
🕀 🛄 model		
⊞ III elev_cm		
GlobalWatershed		
WatershedProcessing		

• Click the Batch Point Generation tool (🙁) on the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar and enter BatchPointGlobal as input Batch Point feature class.

🔮 Batch Point	Generation 🛛 💌
Batch Point	BatchPointGlobal
<u>0</u> K	Help Cancel

• Click on the map and create a few points to delineate in each of the 4 huc polygons.

0	┥॑॑॑ॄ॑ऺ	- 🙀	A Gu	×			
Bat	chPointGlo	bal					>
Π	Shape *	OID *	Name	Descript	BatchDone	SnapOn	SrcType
×	Point	1	4444	on stream	0	1	0
	Point	2	1111	not on stream	0	1	0
	Point	3	2222	not on stream	0	1	0
	Point	4	3333	on stream	0	1	0
н		1 +	ы		4 Selected)		



- Double-click Watershed Processing > Batch Global Watershed Delineation.
- Select the inputs as shown below. Browse to the Global directory containing the subfolders for 1111, 2222, etc. Keep the default names for the outputs and click OK.

Natch Global Watershed Delineation	• ×
Input Batch Point	*
BatchPointGlobal] 🔁
Input Cataloging Unit Junction	
huc_net_Junctions] 🖆
Input Cataloging Unit Edge	
streams] 🖆
Input Cataloging Unit Polygon	
hucpoly 🔻] 🖆
Global Datapath	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\Global	2
Output Global Watershed	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \WatershedProcessing \globalwatershed.gdb \Layers \GlobalWatershed	2
Output Global Watershed Point	
$\label{eq:c:Tutorial} \end{tabular} C: \tabular \end{tabular} C: \tabular} C: \ta$	2
OK Cancel Environments Show	/Help >>

The tool delineates a global watershed for each point in the input BatchPointGlobal feature class having BatchDone=0 or Null.

Batch Global Watershed Delineation	
Completed	ן כ
<> Details	
Close this dialog when completed successfully	
Executing: BatchGlobalWatershedDelineation BatchPointGlobal huc_net_Junctions streams hucpoly C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\WatershedProcessing\Global C:\TUTORIAL\RESULTS\GPTOOLS \WATERSHEDPROCESSING\GLOBALWATERSHED.GDB\Layers\GlobalWatershed C:\TUTORIAL\RESULTS\GPTOOLS \WATERSHEDPROCESSING\GLOBALWATERSHED.GDB\Layers\GlobalWatershedPoint Start Time: Fri Jul 22 06:48:27 2011 Delineating global watershed for batchpoint 1 of 4. Delineating global watershed for batchpoint 2 of 4. Delineating global watershed for batchpoint 3 of 4. Delineating global watershed for batchpoint 4 of 4. 4 global watershed(s) successfully delineated. Succeeded at Fri Jul 22 06:49:02 2011 (Elapsed Time: 35.00 seconds)	4

The DrainID field in the GlobalWatershedPoint is the HydroID of the associated GlobalWatershed.

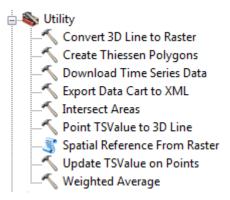
III ▼ IIII ▼ IIII ♥ III ♥ III ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIIII ♥ IIII									
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydrolD	DrainID	Name	Descript			
	1	Point	1	3	4444	on stream	_		
	2	Point	4	5	1111	not on stream			
	3	Point	6	7	2222	not on stream			
	4	Point	8	9	3333	on stream			
4 Point 8 9 3333 on stream I 1 ► I I I I GlobalWatershedPoint 0 0 0 0									

A GlobalWatershed is delineated by performing a local delineation within the HUC where the input BatchPoint is located and then, if the point is located on the stream network, by tracing upstream to identify the upstream junctions and their related HUCs. The tool merge the local watershed (GlobalWsdh=0) with the upstream HUCs to generate the final watershed (GlobalWsh=1). The field RELATEDOIDS stores the OIDs of the upstream HUCs.

_	• 뢉 • ᠲ balWatershed									
Т	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	DrainID	Name	Descript	GlobalWshd	RELATEDOID
T	1	Polygon	232379.99915	485308799.755022	2	3	4444	on stream	0	1,2,3
Γ	2	Polygon	380819.997545	2569047207.23038	3	3	4444	on stream	1	1
1	3	Polygon	2039.999857	59399.998621	5	5	1111	not on stream	1	<null></null>
Γ	4	Polygon	120.000416	900.006242	7	7	2222	not on stream	1	<null></null>
1	5	Polygon	226680.002676	723577500.03461	9	9	3333	on stream	1	

Utility

There are currently 9 tools in the Utility toolset.



You will use the data from the DataGP\ModelResult folder and from the DataGP\TimeSeries folder to test these tools.

- Open a new map document and add the Catchment feature class from the DataGP\ModelResult\Model.mdb geodatabase. Save the map as Utility.mxd in the Utility directory for example.
- Reset the vector target location to point to ModelResult\model.mdb using the Arc Hydro Setup > Set Target Locations tool. The raster location should point to your Utility directory.

≪ Set Target Locations	- • •
Application Name	*
HydroConfig Input Map Name	•
Layers	-
Input Raster Location Workspace	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Utility	2
Input Vector Location Workspace	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Utility\ModelResult\model.mdb	
	*
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

• In the Arc Hydro Tools toolbox, double-click Watershed Processing > Drainage Area Centroid and create the centroid features associated to the catchments (e.g. Centroid).

🔨 Drainage Area Centroid 📃 💷	×
Input Drainage Area	<u> </u>
Catchment 💌 🖻	3
Output Centroid	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Utility\ModelResult\model.mdb\Layers\Centroid	3
	•
OK Cancel Environments Show Help	>>>

1. Create Thiessen Polygons

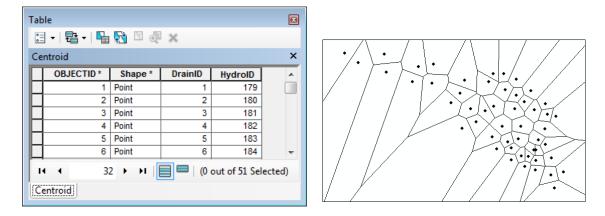
This tool creates the Thiessen polygons associated to input points. The input point feature class must contain the field HydroID that will be transferred into the FeatureID field in the associated Thiessen polygon feature.

- Double-click Utility > Create Thiessen Polygons.
- Select Centroid as the input Point Layer for which you want to create Thiessen Polygon features. Keep the default name ThiessenPoly for the output polygon feature class. Specify whether to transfer all fields from the input point layer or only the feature ids and click OK.

🔨 Create Thiessen Polygons	
Input Point Centroid	Create Thiessen Polygons
Output Thiessen Polygon C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Utility \ModelResult \model.mdb \Layers \ThiessenPoly	Creates Thiessen polygons associated to input points and stores the HydroID of the
Output Fields (optional) ONLY_FID	points in the FeaturelD of the associated Thiessen polygon features.
-	Thiessen polygons have the unique property that each polygon contains only one input point, and any location within a polygon is closer to its associated point than to the point of any other polygon.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool creates the output ThiessenPoly feature class. The FeatureID field stores the HydroID of the associated input point feature.

0	• 🔁 • 🏪	🚰 🖂 🍕	×				
٢h	iessenPoly						3
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	Input_FID	FeatureID	
	1	Polygon	94128.244514	424517827.003708	37	215	
	2	Polygon	58580.154937	169104778.97313	45	223	
	3	Polygon	67477.485367	233094084.501497	50	228	
	4	Polygon	77479.889157	328512776.422704	24	202	
	5	Polygon	30185.627225	60078920.84868	25	203	
	6	Polygon	36671.980556	83737061.576679	20	198	
	7	Polygon	174118.392937	869120940.929108	3	181	
Ŀ		9 🔸 🖬 📗	0 out of 5	i1 Selected)			

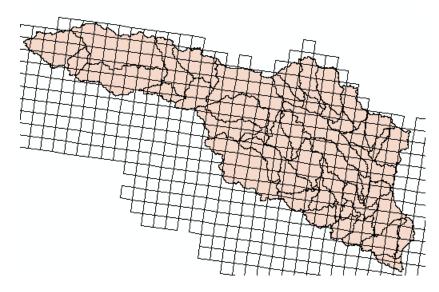


2. Intersect Areas

This tool intersects a From Layer polygon feature class with a To Layer polygon class and attributes the resulting intersected features with the HydroIDs of the source intersected features as well as with the percentage of the area of those source features. These fields may later be used by the tool Weighted Average to transfer values from the From Layer to the To Layer by performing a weighted average.

• Add the feature class super_radar_cal from the DataGP\TimeSeries\TimeSeries.mdb geodatabase into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.

Super_radar_cal is a polygon feature class defining NEXRAD for the study area. You are going to intersect this layer with the Catchment feature class.

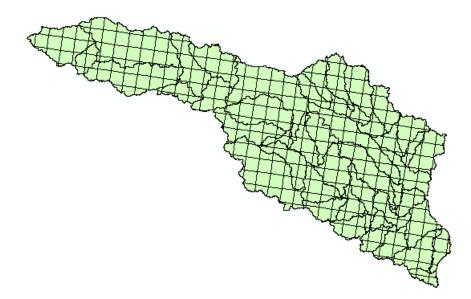


- Double-click Utility > Intersect Areas.
- Select super_radar_cal as From Layer and Catchment as To Layer. Rename the output Intersect Polygon radarcat.
- Specify the attributes from the source layers that should be in the resulting layer. Defaults to ONLY_FID. Note that if you select ALL, the HydroID fields of the source layers will not be exported into HydroID and HydroID_1 fields in the new layer. The HydroID field in the resulting layer will contain new values uniquely identifying each resulting feature in the geodatabase. Click OK.

🔨 Intersect Areas	
Input From Layer for Intersect super_radar_cal Input To Layer for Intersect Catchment Output Intersect Polygon C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Utility\ModelResult\model.mdb\Layers\radarcat Join Attributes (optional) ONLY_FID	Intersect Areas Intersects polygon layers having the HydrolD field. The resulting layer will store the HydrolDs of the 2 corresponding intersected features in the KeyFrom and KeyTo fields and the percentage of the area of each intersected feature in the PctFrom and PctTo fields.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool intersects the 2 source polygon feature classes and for each feature in the resulting intersected feature class, it stores the HydroID of the source features in the KeyFrom and KeyTo fields and the percentage of the areas in the PctFrom and PctTo fields. The HydroID field uniquely identifies the resulting features in the target geodatabase.

able												
-			n									
da	ircat											
Τ	OBJECTID_1 *	Shape *	FID_super_radar_cal	FID_Catchment	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HYDROID	KeyFrom	КеуТо	PctFrom	PctTo	ſ
Γ	1	Polygon	459	31	2526.756292	333222.135201	230	8186	31	2.285328	0.146154	l
	2	Polygon	460	31	18563.61934	5607250.21718	231	8187	31	38.459239	2.459382	
Г	3	Polygon	461	31	15272.722815	14578448.573105	232	8188	31	99.999999	6.394216	
Γ	4	Polygon	462	31	15272.088435	14577236.905374	233	8189	31	99.999999	6.393685	
Γ	5	Polygon	463	31	15271.420661	14575961.62182	234	8190	31	99.999999	6.393125	
Γ	6	Polygon	464	28	15624.034629	8190611.176981	235	8191	28	56.197454	11.341965	
I4 4 340 ► ►I 📄 💷 (0 out of 617 Selected)												



3. Weighted Averages

This tool transfers values from a From Layer feature class to a To Layer feature class by computing area weighted average using the intersect layer created by the tool Intersect Areas.

You are going to use this tool to generate the values of precipitation over each catchment based on the values of precipitation associated to the NEXRAD cells.

- Double-click Utility > Weighted Averages.
- Select super_rad_cal as input From Layer for Intersect polygon feature class and SUM_ as Transfer Value Field.
- Select Catchment as input To Layer and radarcat as Input Intersect Polygon. Click OK.

🔨 Weighted Average	_ • •
Input From Layer for Intersect super_radar_cal Image: Constraint of the sect of	Weighted Average Transfers values from a field in the input From Layer for Intersect feature class into the same field in the To Layer for Intersect feature class by performing an area weighted average. The Intersect Areas (Arc Hydro) tool may be used to generate some of the inputs needed by the tool.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool transfers the value from the From Layer into the same field in the To Layer by performing a weighted average using the values stored in the KeyFrom, PctFrom, KeyTo and PctTo fields in the input Intersect Polygon feature class.

able 図 □ - 뢉 - 囁 阪 ♡ 괜 ×											
Catchment X											
Τ	OBJECTID *	Shape *	GRIDCODE	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	GridID	NextDownID	SUM_	ŀ	
Γ	1	Polygon	1	78780	138075300.000002	1	1	2	3.08077	10	
	2	Polygon	2	120840	263818800.000002	2	2	4	1.7647		
Γ	3	Polygon	3	36720	36160200	3	3	2	1.889653		
Γ	4	Polygon	4	79260	95192100	4	4	8	1.234675		
Γ	5	Polygon	5	105300	178023600	5	5	4	1.572253		
Γ	6	Polygon	6	73380	98660700.000002	6	6	7	1.336934		
I											
at	tchment										

• Save and close the map.

4. Download Time Series Data

To be developed

5. Export Data Cart to XML

To be developed

6. Point TSValue to 3D Line

To be developed

7. Update TSValue on Points

To be developed

8. Convert 3D Line to Raster

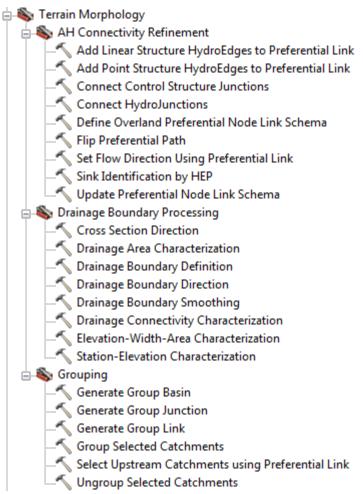
To be developed

9. Spatial Reference from Raster

To be developed

Terrain Morphology

The Terrain Morphology toolset contains 3 subtoolsets that are used to process deranged terrains.



The Drainage Boundary Processing toolset allows generating and characterizing 3D drainage boundaries. You are going to use the data from DataGP\Morphology to test these tools.

- Copy the DataGP\Morphology directory (e.g. Results\GPTools\Morphology).
- Open a new map. Add the Catchment and the DrainagePoint feature classes from the newly copied Morphology.gdb geodatabase, the elevation grid elev_cm, the filled DEM Fil and the flow direction grid fdr. Save the map as Morphology.mxd.

The default target locations points to the Morphology directory and to the existing geodatabase Morphology.gdb in that directory. You can use ApUtilities > Set Target Locations for the HydroConfig node to view the locations.

🔮 Set target loc	cations for HydroConfig 🧾	3
Application	Map Level Map Name: Layers	
Raster Data:	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\	
Vector Data:	C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb	
	OK Help Cancel	

Note

The data was created by using the following tools, starting with the Hillsborough elevation grid (elev_cm):

- Sink Prescreening (threshold: 1,000,000 m2)
- Sink Evaluation
- Sink Selection (Minimum Drainage Area = 15,000,000 m2)
- Fill Sinks (using SinkPoly and IsSink field)
- Set ZUnits to 100 for Fil grid (close ArcMap, edit the prj.adf file and reopen ArcMap)
- Flow Direction with Sinks
- Flow Accumulation
- Catchment Grid Delineation
- Catchment Polygon Processing
- Drainage Point Processing

Drainage Boundary Processing Toolset

1. Drainage Area Characterization

This tool allows characterizing Drainage Areas.

• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Drainage Area Characterization**. Select Catchment as input Drainage Area and the filled DEM Fil as input DEM. Set the Exclusion Area to blank. Set the Extrusion Value to 10 and the Slice Count to 3.Keep the defaults for the output and click OK.

Norainage Area Characterization	
Input Drainage Area	^
Catchment	- 🖻
Input DEM	
fil	- 🖆
Input Exclusion Area (optional)	
	- 🖻
Output Drainage EAV	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\Morphology.gdb\DrainEAV	
Extrusion (linear units) (optional)	
	0
Slice Count (optional)	10
Slice Increment (linear units) (optional)	10
	10
Overwrite Existing DrainEAV Values (optional)	
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool generates the output DrainEAV table that characterizes slices of each input Drainage Area feature. One record is created for each slice (3), one additional record characterizes the bottom of the area and another the extruded slice (if an extrusion value is specified).

inEAV						
OBJECTID *	FeatureID	BottomElev	TopElev	SIcElev	CumArea	CumVolume
1	534	21.88	21.88	21.88	900	0
2	534	21.88	39.976667	30.928333	69056100	576904380
3	534	39.976667	58.073333	49.025	90099900	2041546530
4	534	58.073333	76.17	67.121667	99171900	3783271761
5	534	76.17	86.17	81.17	99171900	4774990761
6	535	17.11	17.11	17.11	6300	0
7	535	17.11	27.51	22.31	79743600	402376374
8	535	27.51	37.91	32.71	83014200	1252799712
9	535	37.91	48.31	43.11	83402100	2118896982
10	535	48.31	58.31	53.31	83402100	2952917982

The tool also stores the maximum and minimum elevation in linear units in the Attributes table of Catchment.

	• 碧 • 骗 🕅 chment	g ⊠ ⊕n ×						
	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	Г
T	79140	99171900.000006	534	261	21.88	76.17	0	ſ
Ī	67440	83402099.999994	535	296	17.11	48.31	0	
Ī	94260	97579799.999998	536	303	16.96	73.72	0	1
T	85740	104029199.999996	537	307	13.82	44.81	0	
T	79260	48712499.999998	538	321	24.11	69.57	0	1
I	123000	157145400.000002	539	322	10.85	63.04	0	1
I	63060	47887200.000001	540	330	10.38	31.92	0	1
I	122520	153482400.000008	541	339	8.63	41.92	0	1
	35640	21245400	542	341	30.88	47.26	0	•
ł				III			4	
H	• 0	► ►I = = (0	out of 23 Sel	ected)				

2. Drainage Boundary Definition

This tool allows generating 3D boundaries lines for the polygon features in the input Drainage Area feature class and storing these lines in the output Drainage Boundary 3D polyline feature class (Zs are stored in linear unit of the terrain). The tool stores in the output Drainage Connectivity table the HydroID of each boundary lines together with the HydroIDs of the 2 drainage areas it separates.

The tool works on all features in the input Drainage Areas feature class.

Drainage areas with internal pits need to be characterized as such before running this function by setting the attribute "IsPitted" to 1 in the input Drainage Area feature class. This is required because only the boundary lines associated to pitted drainage areas will be processed by the function "Drainage Connectivity Characterization".

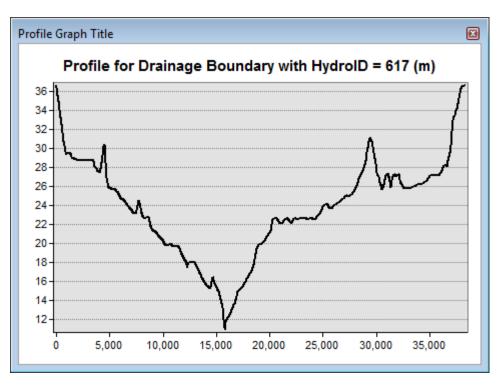
By default, if the field IsPitted (short integer) does not exist or does not contain any 0 or 1, the tool will assume that all area features are pitted. The tool will create the field IsPitted and populates it with 1.

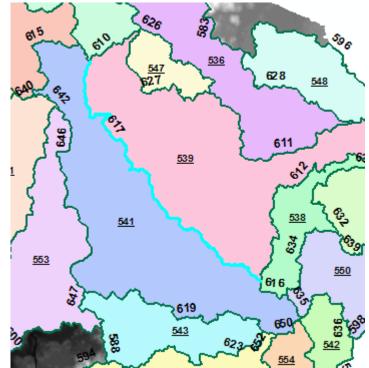
• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Drainage Boundary Processing** > **Drainage Boundary Definition**. Select Catchment as input Drainage Area and the filled DEM Fil as input DEM. Keep the defaults for the output and click OK.

🔨 Drainage Boundary Definition			×
Input Drainage Area	_	Drainage Boundary Definition	^
Catchment	2		
Input DEM	_	Generates 3D boundaries lines for the polygon features in	Ξ
fil	2	the input Drainage Area feature class and stores these	
Output Drainage Boundary	_	lines in the output Drainage Boundary 3D polyline feature class (Zs are stored in linear unit of the terrain). Stores in	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\DrainageBoundary	6	the output Drainage Connectivity table the HydroID of	
Output Drainage Connectivity	_	each boundary lines together with the HydroIDs of the 2	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \DrainConn	6	drainage areas it separates.	
	-	The tool works on all features in the input Drainage Areas feature class.	-
OK Cancel Environments	e Help	Tool Help	

The tool generates the output 3D Drainage Boundary feature class. The field IsIncluded is set to 1 if at least one of the areas separated by the boundary line has the field IsSink set to 1. The field IsDone is populated with 0.

] • 뭠 • ᠲ	🛃 🛛 🔩 🕽	<						
ainageBoundary	,							
OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID *	IsIncluded	IsDone	MinElev	MaxElev	Γ
34	Polyline ZM	20070	613	1	0	14.99	31.97	1
35	Polyline ZM	2520	614	1	0	35.88	37.71	1
36	Polyline ZM	13110	615	1	0	29.07	42.01	1
37	Polyline ZM	4020	616	1	0	31.97	36.89	1
38	Polyline ZM	38280	617	1	0	10.99	36.6	1
39	Polyline ZM	570	618	1	0	32.68	33.51	1
40	Polyline ZM	26190	619	1	0	8.64	35.11	1
41	Polyline ZM	2970	620	1	0	24.6	26.89	1
42	Polyline ZM	20610	621	1	0	10.4	26.93	1
43	Polyline ZM	1470	622	1	0	32.74	35.11	1
44	Polyline ZM	23130	623	1	0	11.82	35.43	1
	Dolyling 7M	10050	604	4	0	42.46	44.07	1





The tool also generates the Drainage Connectivity table that stores the HydroIDs of the Catchment located to the left (FeatureID1) and to the right (FeatureID2) of the boundary lines, based on the digitized direction of the lines.

DrainConn ×							
J	OBJECTID *	FeatureID	FeatureID1	FeatureID2	ConnectType		
	35	614	541	534	Boundary		
	36	615	541	537	Boundary		
	37	616	541	538	Boundary		
	38	617	541	539	Boundary		
	39	618	542	541	Boundary		
	40	619	543	541	Boundary		
	43	622	545	541	Boundary		
l	56	635	550	541	Boundary		
l	63	642	551	541	Boundary		
]	67	646	553	541	Boundary		
٦	71	650	554	541	Boundary		

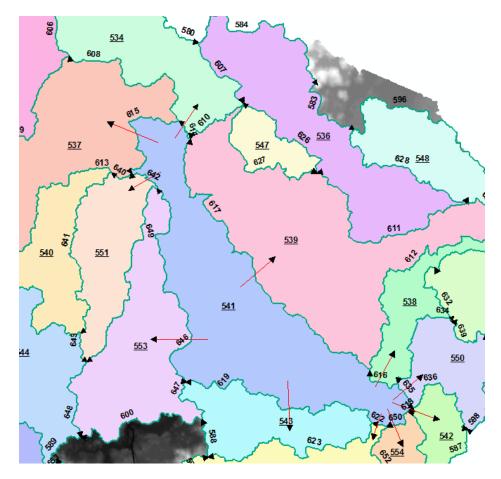
The tool creates the field IsPitted that did not exist and populates it with 1.

Catchment X											
OBJECTID *	Shape *	GRIDCODE	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	Γ
1	Polygon	261	79140	99171900.000006	534	261	21.88	76.17	0	1	10
2	Polygon	296	67440	83402099.999994	535	296	17.11	48.31	0	1	1
3	Polygon	303	94260	97579799.999998	536	303	16.96	73.72	0	1	1
4	Polygon	307	85740	104029199.999996	537	307	13.82	44.81	0	1	1
5	Polygon	321	79260	48712499.999998	538	321	24.11	69.57	0	1	1
$1 \bullet 1 \bullet 1 = 0 \text{ (0 out of 23 Selected)}$											

3. Drainage Boundary Direction

This tool allows setting the digitized direction of the selected Drainage Boundary lines based on user-provided Preferential Link line features. A Preferential Link is a line feature that connects 2 Drainage Area features and its direction defines the preferred flowpath between the 2 Drainage Area features. The digitized direction of a Drainage Boundary line is set from left to right when looking in the digitized direction of the intersecting Preferential Link feature.

• Add the PrefLink feature class into the Table of Contents of ArcMap and modify the symbology of PrefLink and DrainageBoundary so that you can see the digitized directions of the lines.



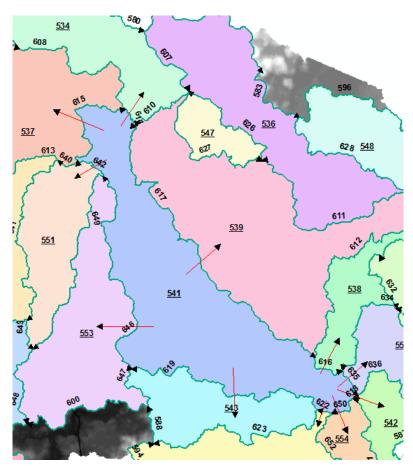
• Open the Drainage Connectivity table and review the connectivity for the Drainage Boundary lines intersected by the Preferential Link features.

able :=		N 🗗 🦓	< 🔁 🖷 🖓	×				
DrainConn ×								
Т	OBJECTID *	FeatureID	FeatureID1	FeatureID2	ConnectType			
▶	35	614	541	534	Boundary			
	36	615	541	537	Boundary			
	37	616	541	538	Boundary			
	38	617	541	539	Boundary			
	39	618	542	541	Boundary			
	40	619	543	541	Boundary			
	43	622	545	541	Boundary			
	56	635	550	541	Boundary			
	63	642	551	541	Boundary			
	67	646	553	541	Boundary			
	71	650	554	541	Boundary			
ы	• 1	L > >I 📃	🔲 (11 out of	f 76 Selected)				

• Double-click Terrain Morphology > Drainage Boundary Processing > Drainage Boundary Direction. Select the inputs as shown below and click OK.

Norainage Boundary Direction	- • ×
Input Drainage Boundary	<u> </u>
DrainageBoundary	- 🖻
Input Drainage Connectivity	
DrainConn	- 🖆
Input Preferential Link	
PrefLink	- 🖻
Input Drainage Area	
Catchment	- 🖻
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

• Refresh the map and review the direction of the Drainage Boundary lines as well as the Drainage Connectivity table.



OrainConn S							
	OBJECTID *	FeatureID	FeatureID1	FeatureID2	ConnectType		
	35	614	541	534	Boundary		
	36	615	541	537	Boundary		
	37	616	541	538	Boundary		
	38	617	541	539	Boundary		
Γ	39	618	541	542	Boundary		
	40	619	541	543	Boundary		
Γ	43	622	541	545	Boundary		
Γ	56	635	541	550	Boundary		
Γ	63	642	541	551	Boundary		
Γ	67	646	541	553	Boundary		
Γ	71	650	541	554	Boundary		

The directions of the lines have been modified using the digitized direction of the intersecting PrefLink features. The fields FeatureID1 and FeatureID2 in the Drainage Connectivity table have been updated to match the new directions.

4. Cross Section Direction

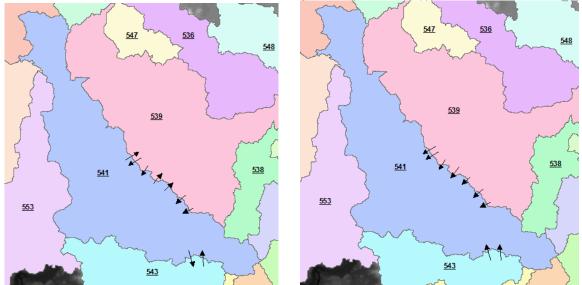
This tool allows setting the orientation of a cross section from left to right when looking in the digitized direction of the intersecting input Line feature. If there is no intersecting Line feature, the direction of the cross section will not be modified.

The tool works on a selected set of cross section features. The tool will process all the cross section features if there is no selected set.

- Add the CrossSection feature class into the Table of Contents of ArcMap. Review the directions of the Cross Section features.
- Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Drainage Boundary Processing** > **Cross Section Direction**. Select CrossSection as Input Cross Section and DrainageBoundary as Input Line and click OK.

Cross Section Direction	
Input Cross Section	Input Line
CrossSection	Input Line features used to set the direction of the intersecting cross section features. The direction of a cross section is set from left to right when looking in the digitized direction of the intersecting input Line feature.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Review the directions of the Cross Section features. Directions have been modified to match the direction of the intersecting Drainage Boundary features.



5. Elevation-Width-Area Characterization

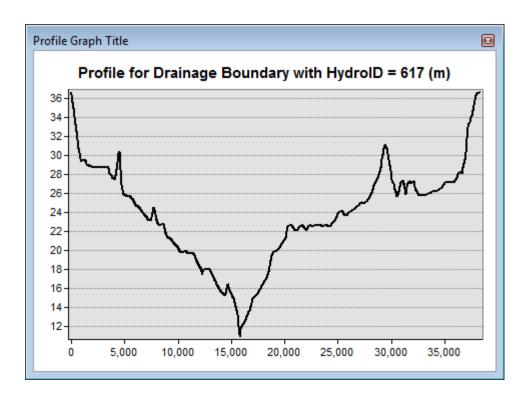
This tool allows computing the width, perimeter and cross-section area associated with slices of 3D lines and stores these characteristics in the output "Boundary EWA" table.

- Double-click Terrain Morphology > Drainage Boundary Processing > Elevation-Width-Area Characterization.
- Select DrainageBoundary as Input Line 3D and Slice Count to 3. Keep the defaults for the other inputs/outputs. Leave Z Factor to 1 as the elevations in the 3D lines already take into account the Z Factor of the elevation DEM elev_cm. Click OK.

🔨 Elevation-Width-Area Characterization		
Input Line 3D	_	*
DrainageBoundary	–	
Output Boundary EWA		
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\Morphology.gdb\BndEWA		
Extrusion (linear units) (optional)		
	10	
Slice Count (optional)		
	3	
Slice Increment (linear units) (optional)	10	
Z Factor (optional)	10	
	1	
Overwrite Existing EWA Values (optional)		Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>	

The tool generates the output Boundary EWA table that characterizes slices of the input Drainage Boundary lines. Each input 3D Line is identified in the table by the field FeatureID that stores the HydroID of the line. The table contains 5 records for each line. The first record provides information on the lowest elevation on the boundary line (BottomElev=TopElev=SlcElev=Minimum elevation along the line). 3 additional records characterize the 3 slices requested when running the tool (Slice Count = 3). Since an Extrusion Value has been specified, one additional record is added for each 3D Line.

dEWA	4								
OB	JECTID *	FeatureID	BottomElev	TopElev	SIcElev	SlcWidth	SicArea	CumArea	SIcPerimeter
	186	617	10.99	10.99	10.99	0	0	0	0
	187	617	10.99	19.526667	15.258333	7255.833333	26028.752393	26028.752393	7255.887104
	188	617	19.526667	28.063333	23.795	31100.09297	156659.739681	182688.492074	31100.225251
	189	617	28.063333	36.6	32.331667	38280	308884.932357	491573.424431	38280.319062
	190	617	36.6	46.6	41.6	38280	382799.999999	874373.424431	38300.319062
	191	618	32.68	32.68	32.68	0	0	0	0
	192	618	32.68	32.956667	32.818333	313.888889	56.80463	56.80463	313.889672
	193	618	32.956667	33.233333	33.095	460.833333	107.838426	164.643056	460.835263
	194	618	33.233333	33.51	33.371667	570	146.831944	311.475	570.202594
	195	618	33.51	43.51	38.51	570	5700	6011.475	590.202594



6. Station-Elevation Characterization

This tool allows computing Station (Measure)-Elevation for each vertex in the input 3D line. The tool works on a selected set of 3D lines and will process all the lines if there is no selected set.

• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Drainage Boundary Processing** > **Station-Elevation Characterization**. Select DrainageBoundary as input Line 3D and click Select All to select all measure formats. Do not check "Use M Value from Line" as the measures are not populated in the Drainage Boundary feature class. Click OK.

Kation-Elevation Characterization	- • ×
Input Line 3D	*
DrainageBoundary	- 🖻
Measure Format	
Measure_Pct	
Measure_Fraction	
Measure_Length	
Select All Unselect All	Add Value
Output Station Elevation Table	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \SETable	
Z Factor (optional)	
	1
Use M Value from Line (optional)	
Overwrite Existing SE Values (optional)	
	~
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool generates the output Station Elevation table that stores the measure and elevation for each vertex in the input Line 3D feature class.

[ab	ole					
(OBJECTID *	FeatureID	Elevation	StationMPct	StationMFra	StationMLen
	26767	616	33.56	98.507463	0.985075	3960
	26768	616	33.58	98.880597	0.988806	3975
	26769	616	33.58	99.253731	0.992537	3990
	26770	616	33.57	100	1	4020
	26771	617	36.55	0	0	0
	26772	617	36.56	0.067174	0.000672	25.714286
	26773	617	36.55	0.134348	0.001343	51.428571
	26774	617	36.52	0.201523	0.002015	77.142857
	26775	617	36.51	0.268697	0.002687	102.857143
	26776	617	36.53	0.335871	0.003359	128.571429

7. Drainage Boundary Smoothing

This tool allows creating new Smooth Drainage Boundary features with jaggy removed by applying out-of-the-box smoothing algorithms (PEAK) to the input Drainage Boundary feature class. The intent is to generate a line that will closely represent the true length of the Drainage Boundary feature.

• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Drainage Boundary Processing** > **Drainage Boundary Smoothing**. Select DrainageBoundary as input Drainage Boundary. The Smoothing Tolerance has to be greater than 0. Set it to 10 meters for example and click OK.

🀔 Drainage Boundary Smoothing	
Input Drainage Boundary	Drainage Boundary Smoothing 👘 🔶
DrainageBoundary 🗾 🖻	
Smoothing Tolerance	Creates new Smooth Drainage Boundary
10 Meters 🔻	features with jaggy removed by applying out-of-
Output Smoothed Drainage Boundary	the-box smoothing algorithms (PEAK) to the
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \DrainageBoundarySmooth	input Drainage Boundary feature class. The intent is to generate a line that will closely
	represent the true length of the Drainage
	Boundary feature.
τ	The second
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the smoothed 3D Drainage Boundary feature class. The FeatureID field in that feature class stores the HydroID of the associated input Drainage Boundary feature.

	, <mark>63</mark> 12 ⊕¶ 1					x	
inageBoundary	Smooth						
OBJECTID *	Shape *	MinElev	MaxElev	Shape_Length	FeatureID		
33	Polyline ZM	24.14	36.8	26843.596416	612		
34	Polyline ZM	14.99	31.97	18335.703946	613		
35	Polyline ZM	35.88	37.71	2310.626317	614	1	
36	Polyline ZM	29.07	42.01	11805.65222	615		
37	Polyline ZM	31.97	36.89	3732.911354	616		
38	Polyline ZM	10.99	36.6	34544.121155	617		
39	Polyline ZM	32.68	33.51	541.491439	618	1	617
40	Polyline ZM	8.64	35.11	23330.794613	619	1	
41	Polyline ZM	24.6	26.89	2747.159025	620		
42	Polyline ZM	10.4	26.93	18661.190937	621	Ŧ	
•	0 + +		t of 76 Select				

8. Drainage Connectivity Characterization

This tool allows creating the network connectivity between areas involving at least one deranged area. The tool does not create the geometric network since it may already have been created by the dendritic processing.

• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Drainage Boundary Processing** > **Drainage Connectivity Characterization**. Select DrainageBoundary as input Drainage Boundary. The Smoothing Tolerance has to be greater than 0. Set it to 10 meters for example and click OK.

🔨 Drainage Connectivity Characterization		
Input DEM	^	Drainage Connectivity
fil 💌 🖻		Characterization
Input Flow Direction Grid		
fdr 🗾 🖻		Generates connectivity for deranged terrain
Input Drainage Area		through the lowest elevations on the boundaries.
Catchment 🗾 🖻		
Input Drainage Boundary		
DrainageBoundary 💌 🖻		
Input Drainage Point		
DrainagePoint 🗾 🖻		
Input Drainage Connectivity		
DrainConn 🗾 🖻		
Output Hydro Edge		
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\HydroEdge		
Output Hydro Junction		
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \HydroJunction		
Output Boundary Drainage Line		
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \Boundary DrainageLine		
	~	-
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help

The tool generates HydroEdge and HydroJunction feature classes if they do not already exist but it does not generate the geometric network.

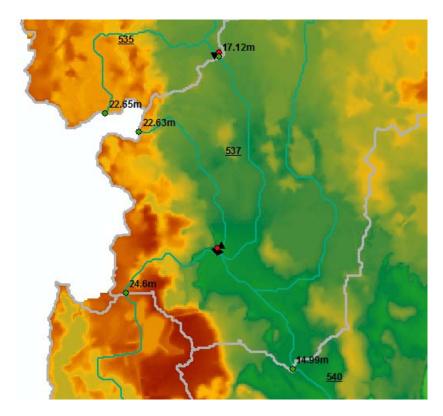
abl												
•	• 🗄 • 🏪	🛃 🛛 📲	×									
HydroJunction X												
Т	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID *	NextDownID	FType	SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled	JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	Elev	Γ.
۲L	1	Point	782	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	38.5	10
Т	2	Point	783	-1	Sink Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	STORAGE	<null></null>	
	3	Point	784	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	22.65	1
	4	Point	785	-1	Sink Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	STORAGE	<null></null>	1
	5	Point	786	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	49.85	
Г	6	Point	787	-1	Sink Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	STORAGE	<null></null>	1
Г	7	Point	788	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	25.81	1
н	•	1 > >1	🔲 🔲 (0 ou	t of 97 Selected)								
ł.	droJunction											

The tool populates the DrainID field with the HydroID of the drainage area (catchment) associate to the HydroEdge. The HydroEdge features of type Boundary Link connects boundary nodes to sink nodes.

ydroEdge ×									
Ī	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled
ſ	1	Polyline M	15.092309	656	550	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True
ſ	2	Polyline M	3276.320344	657	534	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True
	3	Polyline M	5011.173157	658	535	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True
	4	Polyline M	15176.423151	659	536	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True
	5	Polyline M	8136.100084	660	536	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True
	6	Polyline M	23772.444789	661	536	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True
	7	Polyline M	4193.010819	662	537	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True

The BoundaryDrainageLine features also connect boundary nodes to sink nodes. The field LinkID stores the HydroID of the associated Drainage Boundary feature.

Table - 電 - 唱 💀 🖸 🐢 🗙									
BoundaryDrainageLine									
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	LinkID	DrainID	FType	ΙĄ		
	1	Polyline	15.092309	634	550	Boundary Link			
	2	Polyline	3276.320344	580	534	Boundary Link			
	3	Polyline	5011.173157	581	535	Boundary Link			
	4	Polyline	15176.423151	582	536	Boundary Link			
	5	Polyline	8136.100084	583	536	Boundary Link			
	6	Polyline	23772.444789	584	536	Boundary Link			
	7	Polyline	4193.010819	585	537	Boundary Link	-		
н Ну		3 ▶ ▶ ndaryDraina		126 Selecte	d)	•			



The tool also updates the field IsDone with 1 in the Attributes table of the Drainage Boundary feature class to indicate that the drainage boundary feature has been processed.

°	• 묩 • ┗	🚰 🛛 📲 :	×						
ra	inageBoundary	,							
Ī	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID *	IsIncluded	IsDone	MinElev	MaxElev	Ī
Ĩ	1	Polyline ZM	33600	580	1	1	38.5	76.17	10
]	2	Polyline ZM	39210	581	1	1	22.65	48.24	1
I	3	Polyline ZM	120	582	1	1	49.85	50.68	1
]	4	Polyline ZM	8760	583	1	1	25.81	50.83	1
I	5	Polyline ZM	21090	584	1	1	30.91	71.11	1
I	6	Polyline ZM	7500	585	1	1	22.63	25.24	1
I	7	Polyline ZM	4620	586	1	1	44.23	65.3	1
H		6 🕨 🖬 📃	🔲 (0 out of 76 s	Selected)					

AH Connectivity Refinement Toolset

The Arc Hydro Connectivity Refinement Toolset contains a set of tools that allow adding the impact of existing structures to the connectivity established based on the terrain. It builds on the existing network generated using the Drainage Connectivity Characterization tool available in the Terrain Morphology > Drainage Boundary Toolset.

1. Sink Identification by HEP

This tool allows settings the field IsSink to 1 in the input Sink Polygon features containing Hydraulic Element Point features. The field IsSink will be created if it does not already exist.

The tool works on a selected set of Sink Polygon features. It will process all features if there is no selected set.

- Add the SinkPoly and SinkPoint feature classes into the Table of Contents of ArcMap. Open the attributes table of SinkPoly and use the Field Calculator to set the field IsSink to 0 for all records.
- Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **AH Connectivity Refinement Tools** > **Sink Identification by HEP**. Specify SinkPoly and SinkPoint as inputs and click OK.

Nink Identification by HEP			×
Input Sink Polygon	^	Sink Identification by HEP	*
SinkPoly Input Hydraulic Element Point SinkPoint	Ŧ	Sets the field IsSink to 1 in the input Sink Polygon features containing Hydraulic Element Points features. The field IsSink will be created if it does not already exist.	Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

The tool populates the field IsSink with 1 for all the SinkPoly features containing a SinkPoint feature.

SinkPoly ×										
Τ	HydroID	GridID	DrainID	IsSink	FillDepth	FillArea	FillVolume	BottomElev	FillElev	DrainArea
ľ	484	229	229	0	0.67	24300	7542	39.94	40.61	3231000
I	485	230	230	0	0.02	66600	684	28.68	28.7	9027000
]	486	231	231	1	0.68	1230300	113895	32.53	33.21	44385300
Ι	487	232	232	1	0.21	2011500	166599	7.06	7.27	48586500
Ι	488	233	233	0	0.01	1800	18	31.72	31.73	4900500
Ι	489	234	234	0	0.48	6300	1647	36.32	36.8	2073600
•							111			•
I 0 ▶										

2. Connect HydroJunctions

This tool allows connecting structures HydroJunctions located on the Drainage Boundaries. You need to create the geometric network based on the HydroJunction and HydroEdge feature classes.

- Open the Catalog window in ArcMap and browse to the target dataset. Right click the feature dataset (e.g. Layers in Morphology.gdb) and select New > Geometric Network.
- Rename the network ArcHydro and choose to snap using the default tolerance provided. Click Next.

New Geometric Network	? 🗙
Enter a <u>n</u> ame for your geometric net	work:
ArcHydro	
Snap features within specified tolera	nce:
© <u>N</u> o	
Yes	
0.001	Meters
	ch up precisely for features to they can be moved within the limits It value is based on the XY tolerance
[< Back Next > Cancel

• Select the HydroEdge and HydroJunction feature classes for your network and click Next.

New Geometric Network	? 🔀
Select the feature classes you want to build your network fro	m:
 BoundaryDrainageLine CrossSection 	Select All
🔲 😁 DrainageBoundary	<u>C</u> lear All
DrainageBoundarySmooth DrainageLine	Unavailable
DrainagePoint	
🖉 😁 HydroEdge	
V HydroJunction	
PrefLink	
SinkPoint SinkPoint	
	·
< <u>B</u> ack Next	> Cancel

• Select the option to preserve the Enabled field since it is correctly populated and click Next.

TOAL.	
New Geometric Network	? X
Do you want to preserve existing enabled values?	
All network features are initially enabled unless they belong to a featu class that already has an enabled field.	re
© <u>N</u> o	
Enable all network features.	
• Yes	
Enable network features using the existing enabled attribute values. Any features with invalid enabled attributes will be reinitialized to enabled.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

• Select Simple Edge and Simple Junction for the Role and do not set any source or sink. Click Next and keep the default in the remaining windows and create the network.

Nev	v Geometric Network		? 💌				
S	Select roles for the the network feature classes:						
	Feature Class Name	Role	Sources & Sinks				
	HydroEdge HydroJunction	Simple Edge Simple Junction	<none> No</none>				
		< <u>B</u> ack	ext > Cancel				

The network you just created has uninitialized flow directions. You need to set the flow direction in .g. in the digitized direction before using the tools.

• Click Network Tools > Set Flow Direction. Select HydroEdge and With Digitized Direction and click OK to set the flow direction in the network.

≪ Set Flow Direction		- • •
Input Edge Feature Cla	sses	^
HydroEdge		±
		×
		1
		↓
Select Flow Direction		
WITH_DIGITIZED		•
		-
	OK Cancel Environments	. Show Help >>

Note

You need to save your map and close ArcMap to refresh the network and its participating feature classes.

• Save the map, close ArcMap. Reopen the map.

The connectivity established and represented by the geometric network is based only on the terrain. The tools in the current toolset will add additional information to this connectivity.

The HydroJunction/HydroEdge used by this tool may be created using the tools available in the SWFWMD – Connectivity Tools toolbar installed with Arc Hydro. Refer to the document Arc Hydro Connectivity Tools – Tutorial.pdf for more information on how to create the HydroJunction/HydroEdge features.

You need to add the following fields to your HydroJunction feature class:

- JUNCTION_TYPE_DESC
- IsPreferred: short integer
- INCLUDECONNECT_DESC: short integer
 - On the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar, select Network Tools > Data Management Network Tools and set Hydro Junction to HydroJunction and reset the other layers to Null. Click OK.

🔮 Data Management	— ×
Drainage Line	Null
Catchment	Null
Drainage Point	Null
Hydro Edge	Null
Hydro Junction	HydroJunction -
Watershed Polygons	Null
Junctions	Null
Schema Link	Null
Schema Node	Null
<u></u>	Help Cancel

The fields defined in the XML configuration for HydroJunction and missing in the feature class are appended, including the 3 missing fields: IsPreferred, INCLUDECONNECT_DESC and JUNCTION_TYPE_DESC..

- 1	🖥 – 🏪 🌄 🖄 🖉 🗶						
droJur	iction						
Elev	LengthDown	HYDROCODE_DESC	JUNCTION_TYPE_DESC	IsPreferred	INCLUDECONNECT_DESC	CONNECTDONE	Ŀ
31.74	4 <null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
31.87	/ <null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
30.24	4 <null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
20.63	3 <null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	1.
12.27	/ <null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
1.08	3 <null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
						•	
• •	1	(0 out of 97 Select	ed)				

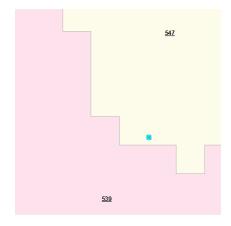
You are going to create a new HydroJunction representing a Culvert point structure on the boundary line between catchments 547 and 539.

- Start editing and add a new Hydro Junction feature on the Drainage Boundary feature between Catchment 547 and 539. Set the fields as follows:
 - JUNCTION PLACEMENT DESC: 'MANUAL'
 - HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC: 'CULVERT'
 - JUNCTION_TYPE_DESC: 'HYDRAULIC ELEMENT'
 - IsPreferred: '1'
 - INCLUDECONNECT_DESC to '1'

Save your edits and stop editing.

ttributes		Ψ×
▶ 2+ a2 ∷ -		
HydroJunction		
		<u> </u>
OBJECTID	98	
HydroID	879	
NextDownID	<null></null>	
FType	<null></null>	
SchemaRole	<null></null>	
AncillaryRole	<null></null>	
Enabled	True	
JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	MANUAL	
HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	CULVERT	
Elev	<null></null>	

• Zoom in to the HydroJunction you just created. Since you did not set the snapping environment, the HydroJunction may not be exactly on top of the DrainageBoundary feature. You are going to snap the HydroJunction onto the boundary.



• Add the SWFWMD – Connectivity Tools toolbar.

SWFWMD - Connectivity Tools		- X
Connectivity - PIPE -	1	Help

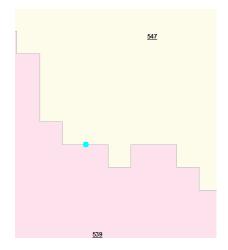
• Select the HydroJunction you just created and select Connectivity > Snap HydroJunctions. Specify the input DrainageBoundary and Hydro Junction feature classes and click OK.

Snap HydroJunction	15 💌
Drainage Boundary Hydro Junction	DrainageBoundary
	HydroJunction 💌
<u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u></u>	Help Cancel

• Specify the snapping distance (e.g. 10) and click OK.

🔮 Snapping Tolerance	×					
Enter the snapping distance for snapping HydroJunctions						
Snapping Distance in Data Units: 10						
OK Cancel						

The HydroJunction has been snapped on top of the DrainageBoundary feature. The tool also added the field INCLUDECONNEC_DESC and populated it with 1.



Tab	le										X
0	- 1 🗄 - 1 🖣	a 🛃 🖸 🏘	×								
Ну	droJunction										×
	HydroID *	NextDownID	FType	SchemaRole	AncillaryRole	Enabled	JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	Elev	INCLUDECONNECT_DESC	
	876	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	20.63	<null></null>	
	877	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	12.27	<null></null>	
	878	<null></null>	Boundary Node	1	None	True	ARCHYDRO	NATURAL OVERFLOW	1.08	<null></null>	
	879	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	True	MANUAL	CULVERT	<null></null>	1	Ψ.
•											•
1	• •	1 > >I 📔	🔲 (1 out of	98 Selected)							
Œ	ydroJunction										

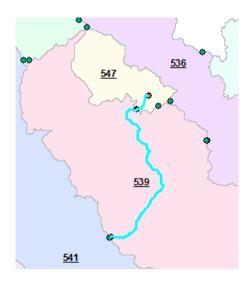
You now need to create the HydroEdges associated to this new HydroJunction – they will link the HydroJunction to the Sink Node HydroJunction in each catchment.

• Double-click Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Connect HydroJunctions. Specify the inputs as shown below and click OK.

Connect HydroJunctions			×
Input Hydro Junction	^	Connect HydroJunctions	*
HydroJunction 💌 🖻			
Input Hydro Edge		Connects structure HydroJunctions created	
HydroEdge 🗾 🔁		manually and of hydraulic type Bridge, Culvert,	
Input Drainage Area		Levee, Dam or Control Structure, i.e. having JUNCTION PLACEMENT DESC = 'MAN ' (Manual)	
Catchment 🗾 🚰		and HYDRAULIC TYPE DESC in ('BRID', 'CULV',	
Input Drainage Boundary		'DAM', 'LEV', 'CS'), to the Hydro geometric network.	
DrainageBoundary 💌 🖻		These hydraulic types are the default types set in	
Input Boundary Drainage Line		the XML configuration for the tool.	
BoundaryDrainageLine 💌 🖻		The tool connects the junctions by creating new	
Input Drainage Connectivity		HydroEdge features of FType 'Structure Link' starting	
DrainConn 💌 🖻		at the boundary junction and ending into a sink	
Input Flow Direction Grid		junction, as well as the corresponding Boundary	
fdr 🗾 🔁		DrainageLine features and connectivity records of	
		type 'Junction' in the DrainConn table.	
	× 1		
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	
	_		

The tool creates 2 new HydroEdge features of type Structure Link with their attribute IsPreferred set to 1.

°	• む• い	🛃 🛛 🚭	×								
lyc	droEdge										
Т	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	IsPreferred	Ŀ
	124	Polyline M	1035.012604	779	544	Boundary Link	Uninitialize	Flowline	True	<null></null>	1
	125	Polyline M	8107.93506	780	556	Boundary Link	Uninitialize	Flowline	True	<null></null>	
Τ	126	Polyline M	1205.954544	781	555	Boundary Link	Uninitialize	Flowline	True	<null></null>	
T	127	Polyline M	1574.79149	880	547	Structure Link	Uninitialize	Flowline	False	1	
T	128	Polyline M	13425.737369	881	539	Structure Link	Uninitialize	Flowline	False	1	
	•	і н н \llbracket		8 Selected)							
•	1 .			8 Selected)							



3. Connect Control Structure Junctions

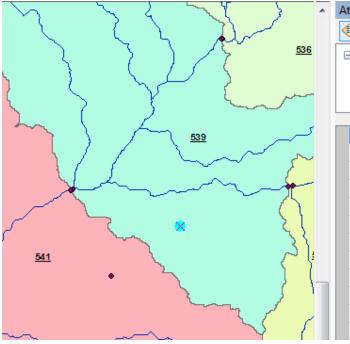
This tool allows connecting HydroJunctions of Hydraulic Type Inlet/Outlet and Control Structure associated to a Control Structure Sequence to the spider web geometric network. A Control Structure Sequence is defined as one or many linear structures and point structures connected together through HydroJunctions and HydroEdges to move water between Catchments.

You are going to create a few inlets and connected structure. Only the HydroJunctions having HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC='INLET' or 'CONTROL STRUCTURE ('CS') and INCLUDECONNECT_DESC = 1 or Null will be processed by the function.

• Select Start Editing and create the following template for HydroJunction by setting the fields Enabled to True, JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC to MANUAL, HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC to INLET and INCLUDECONNECT_DESC to 1.

<u>N</u> ame:	HydroJunction		
Description:			
Tags:	Point		
Default <u>T</u> ool:	₽ Point	•	Drawing Symbol
Faractiouse	HydroJunction		•
Target <u>L</u> ayer:	HydroJuncuon		
🐌 🛃 View	•		
HydroID		<null></null>	
NextDownID)	<null></null>	
FType		<null></null>	
SchemaRole	:		
AncillaryRol	e	None	
Enabled		True	
JUNCTION_	PLACEMENT_DESC	MANUAL	•
HYDRAULIC	_TYPE_DESC	INLET	
Elev		<null></null>	
INCLUDECO	NNECT_DESC	1	
CONNECTD	ONE	<null></null>	
– Text (Length =	ACEMENT_DESC 5) omain: dPLACEMENTI		

• Add one INLET Hydro Junction feature in one of the Catchment feature (e.g. Catchment with HydroID 539) and another one in a neighboring Catchment (e.g. 541).



At	tributes	4 ×
<	🕨 🛃 🏩 🗧 🗝	
E	🛶 🚸 HydroJunction	
	🖸 100	
		- 🔊
	OBJECTID	100
	HydroID	883
	NextDownID	<null></null>
	FType	<null></null>
	SchemaRole	<null></null>
	AncillaryRole	None
	Enabled	True
	JUNCTION_PLACEMENT_DESC	MANUAL
	HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	INLET
	Elev	<null></null>
	INCLUDECONNECT_DESC	1
	CONNECTDONE	<null></null>

• Save you edits and stop editing.

You may need to add a few additional fields to the HydroEdge feature class.

• On the Arc Hydro Tools toolbar, select Data Management Network Tools and reset all inputs except HydroEdge. Click OK.

🔮 Data Management	×
Drainage Line	Null
Catchment	Null
Drainage Point	Null
Hydro Edge	Hydro Edge 🔹
Hydro Junction	Null
Watershed Polygons	Null
Junctions	Null
Schema Link	Null
Schema Node	Null
<u> </u>	Help Cancel

Additional fields defined in the XML are appended to HydroEdge.

• Select Editor > Snapping > Snapping Toolbar and on the Snapping Toolbar click Point Snapping.

Snapping				- X	
Snapping 🕶	0	⊞		Д	
	ſ	Poin	t Sn	appir	na

• Create a new HydroEdge of type Flowline that connects the 2 new junctions and is digitized from Catchment 539 to Catchment 541. Set the following attributes as follows.

	Attributes		ųΧ
			¥11
	OBJECTID	129	
	Shape_Length	3580.250829	
	HydroID	884	
	DrainID	<null></null>	
	FType	<null></null>	
	FlowDir	WithDigitized	
	EdgeType	Flowline	
	Enabled	True	
	IsPreferred	1	
541	LengthDown	<null></null>	
\rightarrow \checkmark	HYDROCODE_DESC	<null></null>	
	NextDownID	<null></null>	
	HYDROEDGE_TYPE_DESC	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	
	HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE	CONDUIT	
	HYDROEDGE_PLACEMENT_TXT	MANUAL	
P	ManningsN	<null></null>	
Λ	WetPeriFt	<null></null>	
~~~~~	CSAreaFt2	<null></null>	
. I have some	Vel_fps	<null></null>	
	Paved	<null></null>	
) <u>543</u>	GroupLink	<null></null>	
	GroupFdr	<null></null>	

- Set the Flow Direction in the digitized direction using Network Tools > Set Flow Direction.
- Double-click Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Connect Control Structure Junctions. Specify the inputs as shown below and click OK.

K Connect Control Structure Junctions	
Input Hydro Junction	Connect Control Structure Junctions
HydroJunction 🔽 🖆	
Input Hydro Edge	Connects HydroJunctions of Hydraulic Type
HydroEdge 🗾 🚰	
Input Drainage Line (optional)	
I 🖉 🖻	
Input Catchment	linear structures of hydraulic type Conduit (CON) or
Catchment 🗾 🖻	Channel (CHAN) and point structures of hydraulic
Input Flow Direction Grid	
fdr 🗾 🖻	
	Configuration.
	<b>v</b>
OK Cancel Environmente CCC Hide Help	Tool Help
Input Drainage Line (optional)  Input Catchment Catchment Input Flow Direction Grid	Channel (CHAN) and point structures of hydraulic type INLET/CS connected together through HydroJunctions and HydroEdges to move water between Catchments. The junctions and edges hydraulic types are default defined in the XML

The tool traces from the HydroJunctions (inlet/control structures) using the geometric network and the flow direction grid and connects the HydroJunctions to the closest Drainage Line or Sink. The tool sets the flow direction in the digitized direction for the new Hydro Edge features.

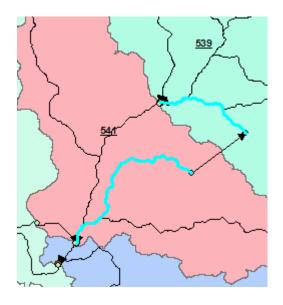
The field HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC is populated with SC (SHALLOW CONCENTRATED) for the newly created HydroEdge features.

Tab	le											X
*== *=	•  <b>뭡•</b>	<b>F</b> 🔂 🛛	o∰ ×									
Hyd	droEdge											×
	HydrolD	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	IsPreferred	NextDownID	HYDROEDGE_TYPE_DESC	HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	HYDROEDGE_PLACEMENT_TXT	
	777	544	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<nul></nul>	Ī
	778	556	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	Ť
	779	544	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<nul></nul>	Ī
	780	556	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	Ī
	781	555	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	Ī
	880	547	Structure Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	False	1	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	Ι.
	881	539	Structure Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	False	1	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	Ι.
	884	<nul></nul>	<null></null>	WithDigitized	Flowline	True	1	<null></null>	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	CONDUIT	MANUAL	Ī
	885	541	Linear Structure	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	1	-1	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	SHALLOW CONCENTRATED	ARCHYDRO	
	886	539	Linear Structure	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	1	-1	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	SHALLOW CONCENTRATED	ARCHYDRO	-
1							m				4	
н	•	$1 \rightarrow $	I   🔲 🔲   (2 out o	f 131 Selected)								
Hy	droEdge											

### Note

CHAN (CHANNEL) is reserved for Hydro Edge features that are manually digitized (like Conduit) but are channels.

The field IsPreferred is populated with 1 to indicate a preferred path. If new HydroJunctions are created (when there are no existing junctions at the ends of the new HydroEdges, which is not the case in this example), the field IsPreferred is also populated with 1 for the new HydroJunctions.



## 4. Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema

#### Note

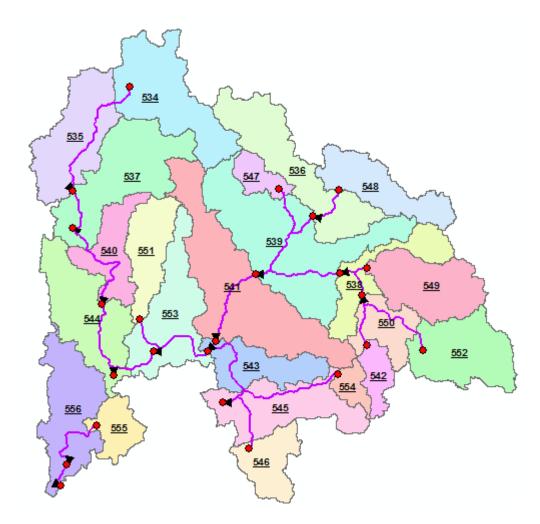
Before using this tool, make sure the geoprocessing setting is set to allow you to overwrite the results of the geoprocessing operations. This setting is required to allow you to update and append/replace records in the output Preferential Node and Link feature classes. If you do not allow overwriting, two new Preferential Link/Node feature classes will be generated each time you run the tool.

This tool allows creating a Preferential Node/Link schema that defines the "main" overland flow paths of type Boundary Link between Catchment features. The input HydroEdge, HydroJunction and DrainageBoundary feature classes used by the tool are the ones created with the Terrain Morphology Drainage Connectivity Characterization function, and NOT the ones created manually and/or during the creation of HEPs (Structure Link) that will be handled by the tools Add Point Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Path and Add Linear HydroEdges to Preferential Path.

- Double-click Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema.
- Specify the inputs as shown and rename the output PreferentialLink "PreferentialLink". Click OK.

🔨 Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema		
Input Sink Point SinkPoint Input Hydro Junction Hydro Junction Input Hydro Edge		Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema Creates a Preferential Node/Link schema that defines the "main" overland flow paths between catchments. The input HydroEdge and HydroJunction feature classes used by the tool are the ones created with the Terrain Morphology Drainage Connectivity Characterization tool, and NOT the ones created manually and/or during the creation of HEPs. The HydroJunctions of FType 'Boundary Node' must have the elevation field (Elev) populated with the elevation of the junction.
OK Cancel Environments	de Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the PreferentialLink and PreferentialNode feature classes that identify the preferred path from one catchment SinkPoint into the next catchment using Boundary Link HydroEdges.



For each Catchment feature being processed, the tool finds the sink point feature within the catchment and copies this point into the output "Preferential Node" feature class. It populates the HydroID field with a new unique identifier and the field SinkID with the HydroID of the source Sink Point. The DrainID field is populated with the HydroID of the Catchment feature.

OBJE	CTID *	Shape *	HydrolD	SinkID	DrainID	1
	44	Point	905	514	537	
	37	Point	901	515	538	-
	42	Point	904	516	539	
	40	Point	902	517	540	
	36	Point	900	518	541	
	29	Point	896	519	542	1

The tool identifies the connected catchment by looking for the HydroJunction features located on the Catchment's associated Drainage Boundary features and identifying the HydroJunction that has the lowest elevation. The elevations are retrieved from the input Drainage Boundary feature class.

The tool looks for connected HydroEdges of type 'Boundary Link' at that location that belong to an adjacent catchment:

- If the tool cannot find an adjacent HydroEdge/Catchment, it creates a Preferential Path that starts at the sink and ends at the lowest HydroJunction on the boundary. The tool creates a Preferential Node at the location of the lowest HydroJunction and populates its SinkID and DrainID with -1.
- If the tool finds one or many connected HydroEdges, for each connected feature it merges the geometries of the Hydro Edges connecting at that lowest Hydro Junction that link the sink points of these 2 catchments. It stores the resulting line in the output "Preferential Link" feature class and populates its HydroID. The tool sets the field IsPreferred to 1 in the HydroEdge features merged to create the Preferential Link.

The tool identifies the lowest HydroJunction features located along all Drainage Boundary features of the identified adjacent catchment at the exclusion of the Drainage Boundary features associated to the first catchment.

If its elevation is lower than the elevation of the HydroJunction previously identified, the first catchment is flowing into the second catchment 2. The tool sets the digitized direction of the Preferential Link from the first to the second catchment 2 and populates the fields in the attributes table of Preferential Link as follows:

- FlowDir: "WithDigitized"
- FNID: HydroID of the Preferential Node in Catchment 1
- TNID: HydroID of the Preferential Node in Catchment 2
- FeatureID1: HydroID of Catchment 1
- FeatureID2: HydroID of Catchment 2

If the elevation of the second HydroJunction is higher, the second catchment is flowing into the first catchment. The tool sets the digitized direction of the Preferential Link from Catchment 2 to Catchment 1 and populates the fields in the attributes table of Preferential Link as follows:

- FlowDir: "WithDigitized"
- FNID: HydroID of the Preferential Node in Catchment 2
- TNID: HydroID of the Preferential Node in Catchment 1
- FeatureID1: HydroID of Catchment 2
- FeatureID2: HydroID of Catchment 1

If both elevations are the same, the tool sets the digitized direction of the Preferential Link from the smaller catchment to the larger catchment. The tool populates the field FlowDir with "WithDigitized". The tool sets the processing flag to both Catchments to Done to skip processing Catchment 2 in the subsequent loop. It populates the following fields in the attributes table of Preferential Link as follows:

- FlowDir: "WithDigitized"
- FNID: HydroID of the Preferential Node in smaller Catchment
- TNID: HydroID of the Preferential Node in larger Catchment
- FeatureID1: HydroID of smaller Catchment
- FeatureID2: HydroID of larger Catchment

re	▼   🔁 ▼   🍡 ferentialLink		×   🔁 🔁 🖓 :							:
Τ	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	FNID	TNID	IsFlipped	FeatureID1 *	FeatureID2 *	GroupFdr
ſ	4	Polyline M	10872.123369	921	896	899	0	536	539	<null></null>
1	5	Polyline M	11143.944302	922	898	899	0	538	539	<null></null>
]	12	Polyline M	13735.798693	929	907	899	0	547	539	<null></null>
Ι	7	Polyline M	10266.610383	924	899	901	0	539	541	<null></null>
	↓ ( eferentialLink)	) • •	(4 out of 22	2 Selected)						



The tool updates the HydroEge's FlowDir field with the direction based on the preferential path:

- The edge highlighted in yellow in the picture below is the upstream part of the link and has its FlowDir populated with "AgainstDigitized" as the flow goes from the sink point toward the boundary node along that edge.
- The edge highlighted in blue is the downstream part of the link the preferential flow is with the digitized direction of its edge.

Both edges have the field IsPreferred populated with 1 to indicate that they are on the preferential path.



Tab	le									X
0	-   🗄 -   🏪	🛃 🛛 🚭	×   🛐 🙀 🖓	×						
Hy	droEdge									×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID *	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	IsPreferred
	70	Polyline M	1105.477272	725	547	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	1
	71	Polyline M	12630.32142	726	539	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True	1
-										Þ
T	• • •	0 > >1	(2 out of 1	31 Selected)						
D	eferentialLink	HydroEdge								

The edges that do not belong to the preferential path have IsPreferred set to Null or 0 and FlowDir set Uninitialized.

Tak	ole										X
<u>.</u>	-   🔁 -   🏪	🚱 🛛 🚭	×								
Ну	/droEdge										×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID *	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	IsPreferred	T 🔺
F	1	Polyline M	15.092309	656	550	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	1	
	2	Polyline M	3276.320344	657	534	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	I
	3	Polyline M	5011.173157	658	535	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	-
-										•	
1	• • :	L > >I	🔲 🗐 (2 out of 13	31 Selected)							
P	referentialLink	HydroEdge									

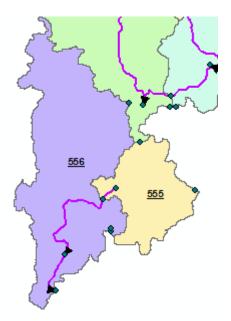
#### Note

You can use the FlowDir field to set the flow direction in the geometric network using the preferential flow path.

## 5. Flip Preferential Path

This tool allows flipping the geometries of preferential path features as well as the directional attributes in Preferential Path attributes table and the FlowDir field in the associated HydroEdge features. The tool works on a selected set of preferential links.

For example, you are going to flip the path so that Catchment 556 flows into Catchment 555 instead of the opposite.



• Select the preferential paths linking the 2 Catchments and review their attributes.

Tak	ole									X
0	-   🗄 -   🏪	🛃 🛛 🚭	× 1 🔁 🗗 🖓 🔅	×						
Pre	eferentialLink									×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	FNID	TNID	IsFlipped	FeatureID1 *	FeatureID2 *	GroupFdr
Þ	1	Polyline M	3135.548699	918	916	917	0	556	-1	<null></null>
	22	Polyline M	9313.889604	939	915	916	0	555	556	<null></null>
1	• • :	1 🕨 🖬 📗	(2 out of 2	Selected)						

The attributes shows that the preferential path goes from 555 to 556 and ends on the boundary of 556 (FeatureID2 = -1) and that the path is the original path generated by the tool and has not been flipped (IsFlipped = 0).

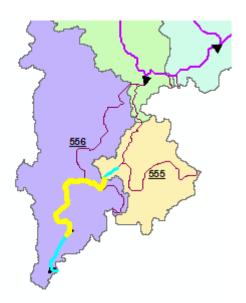
• Select the underlying HydroEdge features using select by Location as shown below.

Select By Location
Select features from one or more target layers based on their location in relation to the features in the source layer.
Selection method:
select features from
Target layer(s):
<ul> <li>HydroJunction</li> <li>ArcHydro_Junctions</li> <li>DrainagePoint</li> <li>PreferentialLink</li> <li>HydroEdge</li> <li>BoundaryDrainageLine</li> <li>DrainageBoundarySmooth</li> <li>CrossSection</li> <li>PrefLink</li> <li>DrainageBoundary</li> <li>Catchment</li> </ul>
Only show selectable layers in this list
PreferentialLink
☑ Use selected features       (2 features selected)
Spatial selection method:
Target layer(s) features are within the Source layer feature
Apply a search distance       5000.000000   Meters
Help OK Apply Close

• Open the Attributes table of HydroEdge and review the selected records.

The preferential links cover 3 HydroEdges and are gainst the digitized direction of 2 edges and against the direction of 1 (in the middle).

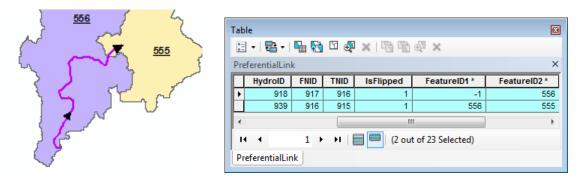
Ta	ble								X
0			× 🔁 🔁 🖉	×					
H	ydroEdge 🤇	elect By Attrik	outes						×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID *	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled
F	27	Polyline M	3135.548699	682	556	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True
	125	Polyline M	8107.93506	780	556	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True
	126	Polyline M	1205.954544	781	555	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True
									Þ.
	IA A	1 🕨 🖬 🛛	(3 out of 13	31 Selected)					
Ŀ	lydroEdge								



• Make sure the links are selected and click Flip Preferential Path. Select Preferential Link and HydroEdge as inputs and click OK.

🔨 Flip Preferential Path	- • ×	
Input Preferential Link	_	
PreferentialLink	<b>–</b>	
Input Hydro Edge		
HydroEdge	- 🖻	
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>	

The digitized direction of the links has been flipped and the values in FeatureID1 and FeatureID2 have been switched. The field IsFlipped is now populated with 1.



• Reselect the underlying edges.

The attribute FlowDir has been switched from WitHDigitized to AgainstDigitized and vice versa to indicate that the direction of the preferential links has changed compare to the digitized direction of the Hydro Edge features.

Tab									X
0	] -   뭡 -   <b>ᄔ</b>	🚰 🛛 🏘	×   ~ ~ ~	×					
Ну	/droEdge								×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID *	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled
Þ	27	Polyline M	3135.548699	682	556	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True
	125	Polyline M	8107.93506	780	556	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True
	126	Polyline M	1205.954544	781	555	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True
-									÷.
1	• •	1 🔸 🖬 🛛	(3 out of 13	31 Selected)					
P	referentialLink	HydroEdge							

# 6. Add Point Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link

### Note

Before using this tool, make sure the geoprocessing setting is set to allow you to overwrite the results of the geoprocessing operations. This setting is required to allow you to update and append/replace records in the output Preferential Node and Link feature classes. If you do not allow overwriting, two new Preferential Link/Node feature classes will be generated each time you run the tool. This tool allows generating Preferential Links and Nodes associated to HydroJunctions of hydraulic

type Culvert ('CULV'), Control Structure ('CS') or Bridge ('BRID'). The tool works on a selected set of 'HydroJunction' features. If nothing is selected, all features will be processed. The tool will not overwrite any existing links or nodes.

The tool loops through all selected HydroJunctions and processes only the HydroJunction features that have the following attributes:

- IsPreferred=1
- HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC in ('CULV', 'BRID', 'CS')

and are connected to at least one HydroEdge having IsPreferred=1.

### Note

Although the tool processes all features when there is no selection, it is better to work on selected features as this is a GIS intensive function and quality control at each step is essential.

- Select the HydroJunction feature of type Culvert you just created and set its field IsPreferred to 1. Double-click **Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Add Point Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link**.
- Select the input Hydro Junction, Hydro Edge, Sink Point, and Catchment feature classes. Specify the Preferential Link and Preferential Node you just created as output so that the tool updates these existing feature classes. Set the optional Hydraulic Element Point feature class to blank.

The tool will display a yellow warning sign indicating that the feature classes will be overwritten. In reality, the tool will append new records in these feature classes and not overwrite the existing Preferential Link and Node features.

K Add Point Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link				X
Input Hydro Junction		~	Add Point Structure HydroEdges to	*
HydroJunction	J 🖻	3	Preferential Link	
Input Hydro Edge	_			
HydroEdge	- 🖻	3	Creates a Preferential Link feature associated to a Point	
Input Sink Point	_		Structure by merging the geometries of the HydroEdges	
SinkPoint	고 🖻	3	connected to the Point Structure. The point structures that can be processed are represented in the nework	
Input Catchment	_		model by the HydroJunction features of hydraulic type	
Catchment	• 🖻	3	Culvert, Control Structure, Bridge, Levee or Dam (default	
Output Preferential Node	_		configuration read from the XML). The point structures	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\PreferentialNode	2	3	may be further defined by Hydraulic Element Point features associated to HydroJunctions (e.g. upstream and	
Output Preferential Link	_		downstream invert location for culvert).	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\PreferentialLink		3	donnotioann infort foodalon for barrony.	
Input Hydraulic Element Point (optional)			Learn more about how Add Point Structure HydroEdges to	
	- 🖻	- 1	Preferential Link (Arc Hydro) works.	-
OK Cancel Environments	<< Hide He	elp	Tool Help	

• Click OK to proceed.

The tool generates a new Preferential Link connecting Catchments via the selected HydroJunction feature of Hydraulic_Type_Desc Culvert.



Point Structure Preferential Link

ferentialLink									
OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	FNID	TNID	IsFlipped	FeatureID1 *	FeatureID2 *	GroupFdr
20	Polyline M	5620.142853	937	911	913	0	551	553	<null></null>
21	Polyline M	15724.920947	938	914	905	0	554	545	<null></null>
22	Polyline M	9313.889604	939	915	916	0	555	556	<null></null>
23	Polyline M	15000.528859	940	907	899	0	547	539	<null></null>

The tool did not create new Preferential Node features in this case but used the existing nodes associated to the sink points at the ends of the link (907 and 899).

#### Note

If the optional Hydraulic Element Point feature class had been specified and that layer contains features associated to the HydroJunction of HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC Culvert being processed, the

direction of the preferential link will be set using the direction set by the elements instead of using the lowest elevation on the boundary of the catchments.

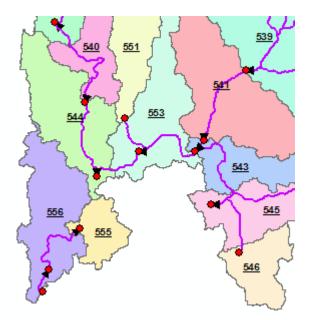
# 7. Update Preferential Node Link Schema

## Note

Before using this tool, make sure the geoprocessing setting is set to allow you to overwrite the results of the geoprocessing operations. This setting is required to allow you to update and append/replace records in the output Preferential Node and Link feature classes. If you do not allow overwriting, two new Preferential Link/Node feature classes will be generated each time you run the tool.

This tool allows generating the Preferential Node and Link feature classes by using the HydroEdge features of FType Boundary Link or Structure Link having the field IsPreferred set to 1. This tool may be used after editing the field IsPreferred in the HydroEdge features of type Boundary Link or Structure Link to modify the desired Preferential Paths.

For example, you are now going to modify the preferential path so that Catchment 544 is not terminal but flows into Catchment 555.



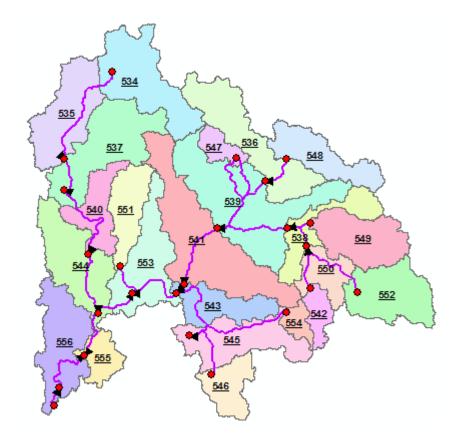
• Set the field IsPreferred to 1 for the 2 HydroEdges connecting 544 and 555.



- Select Catchment 544 as the catchment to process.
- Double-click **Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Update Preferential Node Link Schema**. Specify the inputs as shown below. Make sure that the existing PreferentialNode and PreferentialLink features classes are set as outputs so that these feature classes are updated by the tool. Click OK.

🔨 Update Preferential Node Link Schema	• 🗙
Click error and warning icons for more information	× *
Input Catchment	_
Catchment	<b>2</b>
Input Sink Point	_
SinkPoint 💌	<b>6</b>
Input Hydro Edge	
HydroEdge 💌	<b>2</b>
Input Drainage Boundary	
DrainageBoundary 💌	2
Input DEM	
fil	<b>2</b>
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \PreferentialNode	<b>2</b>
🔥 Output Preferential Link	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\PreferentialLink	<b></b>
OK Cancel Environments Show	Help >>

The tool updates the existing Preferential Node and Preferential Link feature class based on the IsPreferred attribute in the input Hydro Edge feature class. The link between 544 and 553 is removed and a new link is added between 544 and 555.

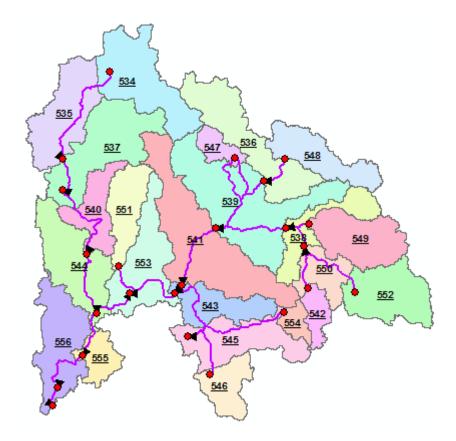


### Note

The Update tool maintains the flipped path between Catchments 553 and 556. You are now going to reset these links to their original direction.

• Select the link between 555 and 556 and the link from the boundary of 556 to its preferential node and click Flip Preferential Path.

The paths are reset in their original direction.



# 8. Add Linear Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link

### Note

Before using this tool, make sure the geoprocessing setting is set to allow you to overwrite the results of the geoprocessing operations. This setting is required to allow you to update and append/replace records in the output Preferential Node and Link feature classes. If you do not allow overwriting, two new Preferential Link/Node feature classes will be generated each time you run the tool.

This tool allows generating Preferential Links and Nodes associated to HydroEdges of type Linear Structure. The tool works on a selected set of HydroEdge features. If nothing is selected, all features will be processed. The tool will not overwrite any existing links or nodes.

The tool loops through all selected HydroEdges and processes only the HydroEdge features that have the following attributes:

- IsPreferred=1
- FType="Linear Structure"

and have their From Point intersecting the FromPoint of another HydroEdge feature.

### Notes

Although the tool processes all features when there is no selection, it is better to work on selected features as this is a GIS intensive function and quality control at each step is essential.

The HydroEdges MUST have the flow direction set in the geometric network. You can set the flow direction if needed by running the Set Flow Direction function in the Network Tools menu.

- Click Network Tools > Set Flow Direction and set the Flow Direction in the digitized direction.
- Select the HydroEdge features having FType="Linear Structure" you previously created.

Hyd	rolD	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	HYDROCODE_DESC	NextDownID	HYDROEDGE_TYPE_DESC	HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC	HYDROEDGE_PLACEMENT_TXT	IsPreferre
	872	544	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	«Null»	<null></null>	<null></null>	
	873	556	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>
	875	544	Boundary Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>
	876	556	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	
	878	555	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	
	881	<null></null>	<null></null>	WithDigitized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	<null></null>	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	CONDUIT	MANUAL	<null></null>
	882	541	Linear Structure	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	-1	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	SHALLOW CONCENTRATED	ARCHYDRO	
	883	539	Linear Structure	Uninitialized	Flowline	True	<null></null>	-1	HYDRAULIC ELEMENT	SHALLOW CONCENTRATED	ARCHYDRO	
	931	547	Structure Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	False	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	
	932	539	Structure Link	Uninitialized	Flowline	False	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	<null></null>	



- Double-click Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Add Linear Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link.
- Select the input Hydro Edge, Sink Point and Catchment feature classes. Specify the Preferential Link and Preferential Node you just created as output so that the tool updates these existing feature classes.

The tool will display a yellow warning sign indicating that the feature classes will be overwritten. In reality, the tool will append additional records into the existing feature classes. Note that took will not delete the existing overland Preferential Link existing between the Catchments linked by the control structure.

🔨 Add Linear Structure HydroEdges to Preferential Link
Click error and warning icons for more information
Input Hydro Edge
HydroEdge 🗾 🔁
Input Sink Point
SinkPoint 💌 🖻
Input Catchment
Catchment 💌 🖻
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \PreferentialNode
Output Preferential Link
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \PreferentialLink
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

• Click OK to proceed.

The tool adds a new Preferential Link feature between Catchments 539 and 541 in addition to the one that was generated with the tool Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema. It does not replace the existing link.



Linear Structure Preferential Link

▦	Attributes of PreferentialLink										
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydrolD	FlowDir	FNID	TNID	FeatureID1	FeatureID2	^	
	33	Polyline M	3352.25816	944	WithDigitized	901	890	538	549		
	43	Polyline M	11143.944302	954	WithDigitized	901	904	538	539		
	41	Polyline M	10266.610383	952	WithDigitized	904	900	539	541		
	47	Polyline M	18745.755323	958	WithDigitized	904	900	539	541		
	39	Polyline M	10032.640687	950	WithDigitized	902	899	540	544		
	40	Polyline M	1660.660172	951	WithDigitized	900	898	541	543	V	
	Record: II	• 0	► ► Show:	All Select	ted Records	(1 out o	f 24 Selec	ted)	Options 👻		

The tool did not create new Preferential Node features in this case but used the existing nodes associated to the sink points at the ends of the link (900 and 904).

The tool traced first from the FromPoint of each selected Hydro Edge features of type Linear Structure to find all downstream HydroEdges (Conduit as well as Linear Structures Edges). The tool merged the geometries of all resulting HydroEdges to create a new PreferentialLink feature having 'FlowDir=WithDigitized'.



The FromPoint of the Preferential Link feature is the ToPoint of the HydroEdge feature of FType Linear Structure associated to from point of the conduit being processed and its ToPoint is at the end of the trace (i.e. the ToPoint of the HydroEdge of FType Linear Structure at the downstream end of the Conduit (sink)).

The tool creates output Preferential Node features if they do not already exist at each Sink Point located at the ToPoint of the Linear Structure HydroEdges at both ends of the Preferential Link. The SinkID is populated with the HydroID of the Sink Point.

For Preferential Links, the tool sets FNID=HydroID of the 'From Preferential Node' and TNID= HydroID of the 'To Preferential Node'.

The tool populates the fields FeatureID1 and FeatureID2 with the HydroID of the From and To Catchments associated to a Preferential Link. Catchments are retrieved by spatial query using the Sink Point features.

#### Note

When the HydroEdges that are pipes (HEP lines) cross Linear Structures, the digitized direction (FromNode and ToNode) will not be maintained since new vertices will be introduced at the intersecting points. However FNID, TNID, FeatureID1 and FeatureID2 will be maintained to establish the flow.

## 9. Set Flow Direction Using Preferential Link

This tool allows settings the flow direction for the HydroEdges based on the direction of the Preferential Links.

- Reset the FlowDir field for all HydroEdge features to 0 (Uninitialized).
- Double-click Terrain Morphology > AH Connectivity Refinement Tools > Set Flow Direction Using Preferential Link.

• Specify the inputs/outputs as shown below and click OK.

K Set Flow Direction Using Preferential Link	- • •
Input Hydro Edge	<u>^</u>
HydroEdge	- E
Input Preferential Link	
PreferentialLink	I 🖻 🗌
	Ŧ
•	•
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool updates the field FlowDir in the attributes table of HydroEdge based on the direction of the associated Preferential Link. The HydroEdges highlighted in yellow in the picture and table below are the ones associated with a Preferential Link.



HydroEdge ×										
	HydroID *	DrainID	FType	FlowDir	EdgeType	Enabled	IsPreferred	] -		
	682	556	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	1	Π		
	776	555	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True	1			
	777	544	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	1			
	780	556	Boundary Link	WithDigitized	Flowline	True	1	۲		
	781	555	Boundary Link	AgainstDigitized	Flowline	True	1	١,		
•			III				4			

#### Note

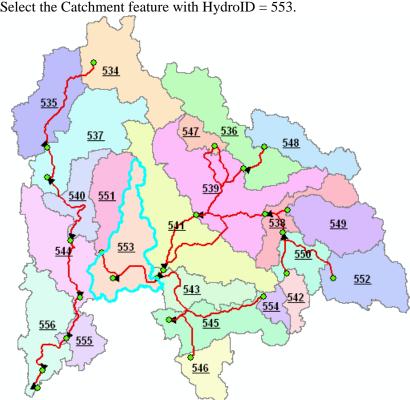
The FlowDir field is populated by the tools defining the preferential flow paths and you will not need to run the Set Flow Direction using Preferential Link tool if you do not manually edit this field.

## Grouping Toolset

The Grouping Toolset contains a set of tools that allows regrouping catchment to facilitate analyses.

## 1. Select Upstream Catchments using Preferential Node Link

This tool allows identifying the Catchment features located upstream of the selected Catchment features based on the Preferential Link and Node feature classes and populating the GroupID field in these Catchments with the same identifier.



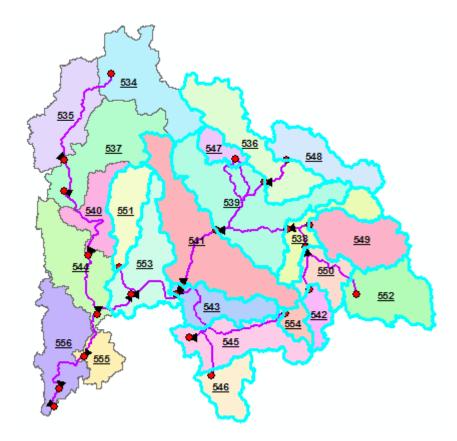
Select the Catchment feature with HydroID = 553. •

- Double-click Terrain Morphology > Grouping Toolset > Select Upstream • **Catchments using Preferential Node Link.**
- Specify the input Catchment and Preferential Link feature classes and click OK.

🔨 Select Upstream Catchments using Preferential Link	
Input Catchment	^
Catchment	<b>–</b> 🔁
Input Preferential Link	
PreferentialLink	- 🖻
Overwrite Existing GroupID (optional)	
l I i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool identifies and selects the Catchment features located upstream from the selected Catchment based on the Preferential Link features. It creates and populates the GroupID field with a unique identifier for the potential group. It populates the field IsTerminal with 1 for Catchment 553 to indicate that it is the most downstream (i.e. terminal) catchment for this group.

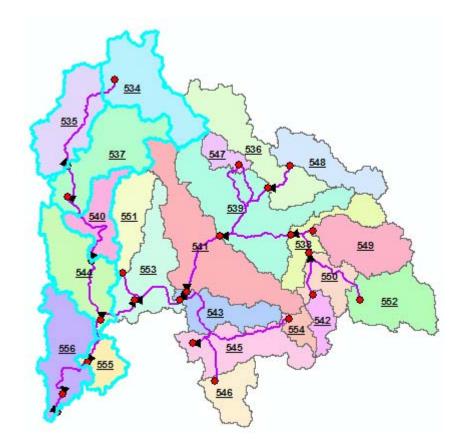
atchme	nt								
Hydr	oID *	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	GroupID	IsTerminal	Ī
	549	453	25.64	75.11	1	1	961	<null></null>	1
	550	472	26.13	47.18	1	1	961	<null></null>	
	551	480	10.23	33.72	1	1	961	<null></null>	
	552	486	32.53	75.49	1	1	961	<null></null>	
	553	487	7.06	29.7	1	1	961	1	1
	554	492	30.21	44.89	1	1	961	<null></null>	
	555	501	-0.09	26.9	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
	556	505	-0.1	22.72	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>	1
t								•	



• Select the Catchment feature with HydroID 556 and rerun the function without the overwrite option).

Catchment											
	HydroID *	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	GroupID	IsTerminal	Γ		
	550	472	26.13	47.18	1	1	961	<null></null>	]		
	551	480	10.23	33.72	1	1	961	<null></null>			
	552	486	32.53	75.49	1	1	961	<null></null>			
	553	487	7.06	29.7	1	1	961	1			
	554	492	30.21	44.89	1	1	961	<null></null>			
	555	501	-0.09	26.9	1	1	962	<null></null>			
	556	505	-0.1	22.72	1	1	962	1			
ŧ								•			

The tool selects and populates the field GroupID for the remaining group.

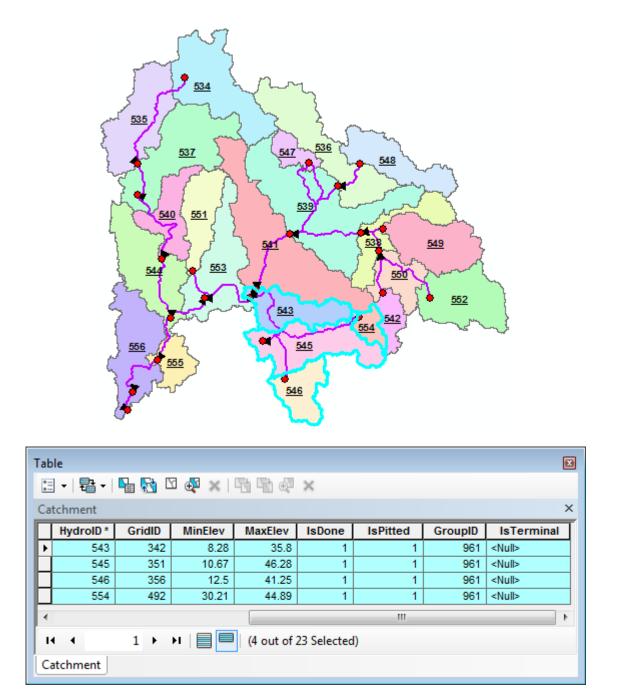


## 2. Group Selected Catchment

This tool allows manually modifying the GroupID attribute for the selected Catchments. This GroupID may have been assigned by the tool Select Upstream Catchments using Preferential Node/Link.

You are going to regroup the 4 Catchment features at the bottom right (HydroIDs 543, 545, 546 and 554).

• Select these Catchments. They currently belong to group 961.



• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Grouping Toolset** > **Group Selected Catchments**. Select Catchment as input Catchment feature class, check the Overwrite option since the GroupID field is already populated and click OK.

K Group Selected Catchments			×
Input Catchment		Group Selected Catchments	Â
Catchment 🗾 🖆			
☑ Overwrite Existing GroupID (optional)	4 III	Assigns a unique GroupID for selected Catchments. The selection may be created manually or using the tool Select Upstream Catchments Using Preferential Node Link.	•
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

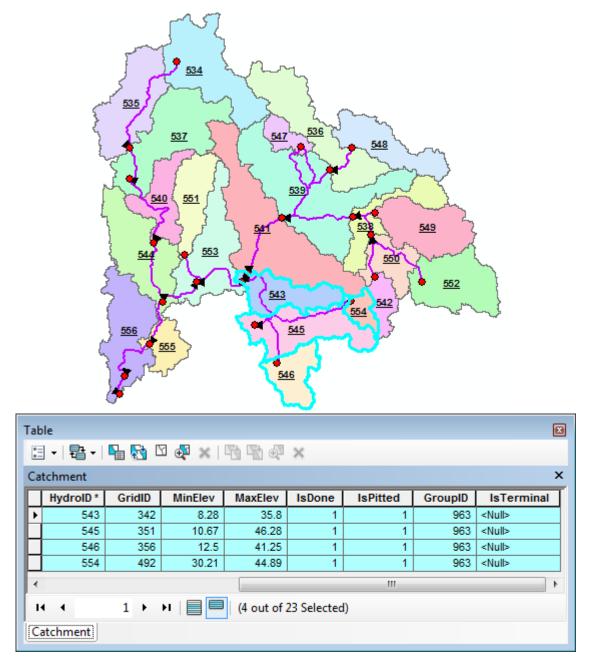
The tool updates the field GroupID for the selected features and resets to Null the GroupID of the other features that had the same GroupID (936) before the update.

Tab	le							X			
°	II -   I										
Ca	Catchment										
	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	GroupID	IsTerminal				
	351	10.67	46.28	1	1	963	<null></null>				
	356	12.5	41.25	1	1	963	<null></null>				
	403	22.42	63.74	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>				
	405	21.15	47.28	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>	+			
₹								•			
ŀ	• •	1 >	•	(4 out o	f 23 Selected)						
l ICa	atchment										

## 3. Ungroup Selected Catchments

This tool allows resetting the GroupID to Null for the selected Catchments.

• Select the 4 Catchment features at the bottom right corner that have the field GroupID populated.



• Double-click **Terrain Morphology** > **Grouping Toolset** > **Ungroup Selected Catchments**. Select Catchment as input Catchment feature class and click OK.

Nungroup Selected Catchments	
Input Catchment	Ungroup Selected Catchments
Catchment 🗾 🔁	Ungroups selected Catchments by setting the attribute GroupID to 'Null' for selected Catchments. When running outside of Arc Map, the user can either
	or the box 'Data Management->Make Feature Layer' tool or use the output from the tools Select Upstream Catchments using Preferential Node Link or Group Selected Catchments.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

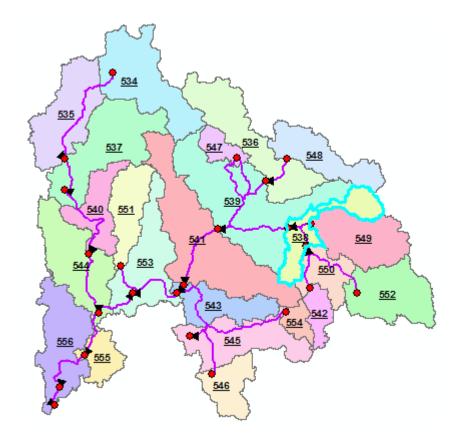
The tool resets the GroupID for the selected fields to Null.

Tal	Table 🖸										
0	∷ -   == -   == 🚱 🖸 🚭 ×   == == == ×										
Ca	Catchment ×										
	HydroID *	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	GroupID	IsTerminal			
F	543	342	8.28	35.8	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>			
	545	351	10.67	46.28	1	1	<null></null>	<nul⊳< td=""></nul⊳<>			
	546	356	12.5	41.25	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>			
	554	492	30.21	44.89	1	1	<null></null>	<null></null>			
						III					
	4 4	1 +	M   📄 🧮	4 out of	23 Selected	)					
C	atchment										

## 4. Generate Group Basin

This tool allows dissolving Catchment features based on the GroupID attribute to create the output Group Basin polygon feature class.

• Clear the selection and select the Catchment with HydroID 538 as shown below.



- Run the tool Select Upstream Catchments using Preferential Node Link without the overwrite option checked to repopulate the null GroupIDs for this group.
- Repeat this operation after selecting first 541, then 543 and finally 553 with the option to overwrite kept unchecked to populate the remaining GroupIDs.

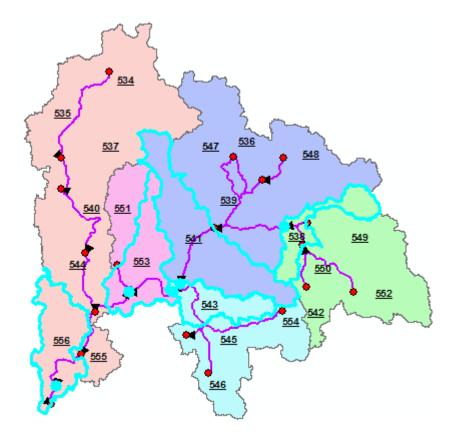
🀔 Generate Group Basin	
Input Catchment	Generate Group Basin
Catchment 🔽 🚰	
Input Preferential Link	Dissolves input Catchment features based on the
PreferentialLink 🗾 🔁	GroupID attribute and stores the resulting dissolved
Input Sink Point	polygons in the output Group Basin feature class.
SinkPoint 🗾 🖻	and Sink Point features associated to each Group
Output Group Basin	Basin and populates their attribute IsTerminal with 1.
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Morphology \morphology.gdb \Layers \GroupBasin	
	Populates the field IsPitted to indicate whether the
Ψ	Group Basin is deranged (1) or dendritic (0).
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

• Double-click Terrain Morphology > Grouping Toolset > Generate Group Basin.

The tool merges the Catchments having the same GroupID to create the output GroupBasin feature class. The HydroID field in the GroupBasin is populated with the GroupID from the Catchments belonging to the group and uniquely identifies the group.

The tool populates the field IsPitted with 1 to indicate that the GroupBasin feature is deranged.

_	] •   🔁 •   🖣	L 🔂 🖸 🤞	×			>
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	HydroID	IsPitted
۲	1	Polygon	246540	533098800	962	1
	2	Polygon	124860	256249799.999987	964	1
	3	Polygon	205080	487181699.999997	965	1
	4	Polygon	116340	180735299.999996	966	1
	5	Polygon	91920	134938799.999995	967	1
Ŀ	• •	1 ► H	🔲 💻   (0 out of	f 5 Selected)		



The tool also populates the field IsTerminal with 1 for the Catchment and Sink Point features located at the downstream end of a group.

) Ca	tchment		-						>
٦	HydroID *	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	GroupID	IsTerminal	14
۲	538	321	24.11	69.57	1	1	964	1	П
	541	339	8.63	41.92	1	1	965	1	
	543	342	8.28	35.8	1	1	966	1	
	553	487	7.06	29.7	1	1	967	1	
	556	505	-0.1	22.72	1	1	962	1	-
ł								- F	
Ŀ		1 +	FI   🗐 🥅	(5 out of	23 Selected	<b>N</b>			

Tał	ble				X
0	] •   ┺ •   ┺	🛃 🛛 🍕	× 1 🖓 🛛	i 🖓 🗙	
Sir	nkPoint				×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	IsTerminal	
E	5	Point	515	1	
	8	Point	518	1	
	10	Point	520	1	
	20	Point	530	1	
	23	Point	533	1	
	<ul> <li>▲ ▲</li> <li>inkPoint</li> </ul>	1 <b>→ →</b>	(5	out of 23 Selecte	ed)

## 5. Generate Group Junction

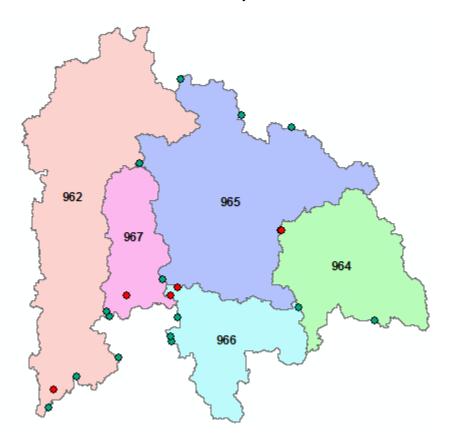
This tool allows generating Group Hydro Junctions associated to the Group Basins the same way Hydro Junctions are associated to Catchment. This tool will create 3 types of Group Hydro Junction features:

- Junction located on the Group Basin boundary usually associated to structures (Bridge, culvert, cross section, natural overflow).
- Hydro Junction associated to Group Basin sink point (e.g. terminal sink point)
- Dendritic Hydro Junction within the Group Basin
  - Double-click Terrain Morphology > Grouping Toolset > Generate Group Junction.
  - Specify the input Group Basin, Hydro Junction and Sink Point features, enter a name for the output Group Junction feature class and click OK.

K Generate Group Junction			×
Input Group Basin	*	Generate Group Junction	^
GroupBasin 🗾 🛃			
Input Hydro Junction		Creates a new Group Junction point feature class by reselecting from	
HydroJunction 🗾 🔁		Hydro Junction features that meet one of the following criteria:	
Input Sink Point			
SinkPoint 🗾 🚰		<ul> <li>Hydro Junction features located on a Group Basin boundary</li> </ul>	
Output Group Junction		between 2 group basins with at least one of the 2 having IsPitted = 1 (i.e. deranged) and having a Hydraulic Type set to Bridge	
C: \Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\GroupJunction		<ul> <li>("BRID"), Culvert ("CULV"), Cross Section ("CS"), Dam ("DAM"), Levees ("LEV") (default structures list read from the configuration XML), or Natural Overflow ("NO"). The field IsPitted is populated by the tool Generate Group Basin. The Natural Overflow junctions (or Boundary Node) may be created with the tool Drainage Connectivity Characterization.</li> <li>Hydro Junction features located under the terminal sink point associated to the Group Basin. This sink point is identified by the tool Generate Group Basin. This sink point is identified by the tool Generate Group Basin that assigns the value 1 in the field IsTerminal.</li> <li>Dendritic Hydro Junction features within the Group Basin having FType= "Drainage Inlet", "Drainage Outlet" or "Stream Confluence". These junctions are created by the tool Hydro Network Generation.</li> </ul>	Е
	Ŧ	The tool processes all Group Basin features in the input Group Basin feature class.	+
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

The tool processes each Group Basin feature in the input Group Basin feature class. For each Group Basin, it creates Group Hydro Junction for each structure located on its boundary, for its sink point and for each dendritic junction located within the Group Basin.

In this example, the tool only creates 23 Group Junctions corresponding to the 5 identified terminal sinks in the input Sink Point feature class and 16 boundary nodes.



Tab							×
0	] •   🔁 •   🏪	🛃 🛛 🗄	×				
Gr	oupJunction						×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	FType	Elev	JUNCTIONID	
	16	Point	983	NO	8.29	870	
	17	Point	984	NO	7.28	871	
	18	Point	985	NO	31.87	874	
	19	Point	986	SINK	<nul></nul>	793	
	20	Point	987	SINK	<nul></nul>	797	
	21	Point	988	SINK	<null></null>	817	-
G	• • (	0 • • • [	(0)	out of 23	Selected	)	

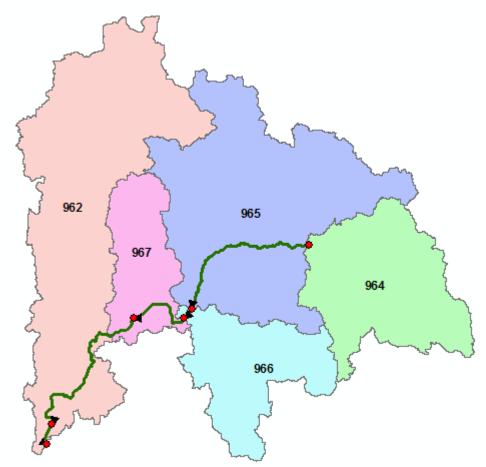
### 6. Generate Group Link

This tool allows generating the Group Link and Group Node feature classes defining the preferred connectivity between Group Basin features.

- Double-click Terrain Morphology > Grouping Toolset > Generate Group Link.
- Specify the input Group Junction, Group Basin, Hydro Junction, Hydro Edge, Catchment and Preferential Link feature classes. Specify the name of the output Group Link and Group Node feature classes and click OK.

🔨 Generate Group Link				
Generate Group Link         Input Group Junction         GroupJunction         Input Group Basin         GroupBasin         Input Hydro Junction         Hydro Junction         Input Hydro Junction         Input Hydro Edge         HydroEdge         Input Catchment         Catchment         Input Preferential Link         Preferential Link         Output Group Node	• ( • ( • (		*	Generate Group Link Creates Group Node and Group Link feature classes that establish the connectivity between Group Basins based on Group Junctions and Hydro Network. Group Links connects the Group Sinks or dendritic outlets of adjacent Group Basin via the lowest Group Junctions located on the Group Basin boundaries and via Group Junction structures located on the shared boundaries. It is a preferred connectivity, similar to the preferential path, at the Group Basin level. Learn more about how Generate Group Link (Arc Hydro) works.
C: \Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\GroupNode Output Group Link C: \Tutorial\Results\GPTools\Morphology\morphology.gdb\Layers\GroupLink			Ŧ	*
OK Cancel Environments	<< Hide	e Help		Tool Help

The tool generates the GroupLink and GroupNode feature classes storing the preferential links between the Group Basin features. It follows a 2 steps process to identify and generate the links:



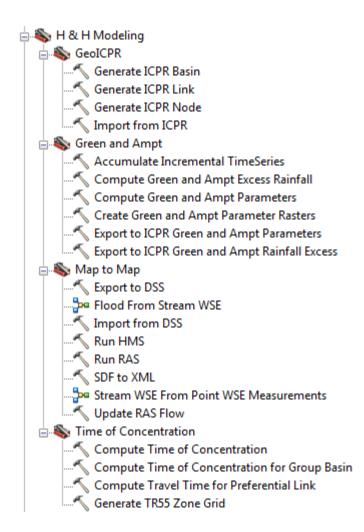
- 1. It looks for the Group Junction features of FType Stream Confluence. For each identified Group Junction, it looks for the overlaying Group Basin (only 1 is expected) and for the HydroEdge features connecting at the Group Junction. It creates one link for each Hydro Edge feature not already processed and populates the DrainID field with the Hydro ID of the Group Basin.
- 2. It looks for the Group Junction features located on each Group Basin boundaries and identifies the lowest Group Junction for each Group Basin. It snaps the lowest Group Junction into each of the Group Basin features separated by the Group Junction and performs a trace using the GroupFdr grid from this point until it reaches the Sink or another Group Link feature. If it intersects an existing Group Link, the trace stops at the intersection and the tool creates a new Group Junction of FType 'CONFLUENCE' at that location.

Gr	oupNode					3
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydrolD	DrainID	SinkID	JUNCTIONID
┣	1	Point	986	964	<null></null>	793
	2	Point	987	966	<null></null>	797
	3	Point	988	967	<null></null>	817
	4	Point	989	962	<null></null>	823
	5	Point	990	965	<null></null>	837
	6	Point	997	-1	-1	978

Tab											X	
°= •=	•   🔁 •   🏪	🛃 🛛 📲	×									
GroupLink												
Π	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	FNID	TNID	FeatureID1 *	FeatureID2 *	IsFlipped	CatchmentID1	CatchmentID2	
নি	1	Polyline	3135.548699	998	989	997	962	-1	0	556	-1	
	3	Polyline	1660.660172	1000	990	987	965	966	0	541	543	
	4	Polyline	9052.051942	1001	987	988	966	967	0	543	553	
	6	Polyline	21410.554686	999	986	990	964	965	0	538	541	
	8	Polyline	23758.550981	1002	988	989	967	962	<null></null>	553	556	
I∢ Gr	oupLink	L → →I [	🔲 🔲   (0 out of 5	5 Selected)								

# H&H Modeling

The H&H Modeling (Hydrologic and Hydraulic Modeling) toolset contains 4 subtoolsets:



## Time of Concentration Toolset

This set of tools allows computing the time of concentration for basins and group basins. You will use the tutorial data from the DataGp\TimeofConcentration directory to test these tools.

- Copy the DataGP\TimeofConcentration directory (e.g. Results\GPTools\ TimeofConcentration).
- Open a new map. Add the Catchment, HydroEdge and DrainagePoint feature classes from the newly copied Morphology.gdb geodatabase. Add the elevation grid elev_cm and the filled DEM Fil. Save the map as TimeofConcentration.mxd.

## 1. Generate TR55 Zone Grid

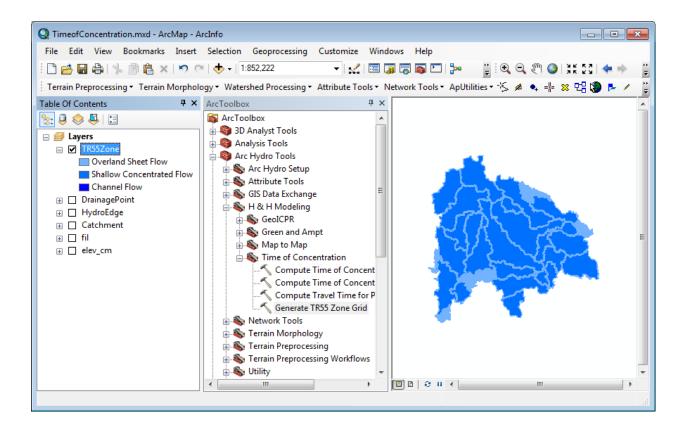
This tool generates the TR55 Zone Grid defining the way the water is moving across the land. This grid will be used as input by the tool Compute Time of Concentration. The tool will process all input drainage areas and set the extent using the input DEM grid.

The input Hydro Edge feature class is optional. If specified, only the features having HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC='CHAN' (CHANNEL) will be used to define Zone 3.

- Double-click H&H Modeling > Time of Concentration > Generate TR55 Grid.
- Specify the input Drainage Area feature class (e.g. Catchment) and the input DEM grid used to set the cell size and extent of the output grid. Enter the Overland Flow Distance in meters. Specify the optional HydroEdge feature class. Enter a name for the output TR55 Zone Grid. Click OK.

🔨 Generate TR55 Zone Grid	
Input Drainage Area	Generate TR55 Zone Grid
Catchment 💌 🖻	
Input DEM	Creates a new TR55 Zone grid that identifies 3 TR55 zones within the
elev_cm 🗾 🖻	extent of the input DEM Grid. Each zone defines a way for the water to move within each drainage area.
Overland Flow Distance in Meters	to move within each drainage area.
300 Output TR55 Zone Grid	<ul> <li>Zone 1: Sheet flow. Flow over plane surfaces. It usually occurs in the headwater of streams and is assigned to all cells within</li> </ul>
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeofConcentration\Layers\TR55Zone	the specified Overland Flow Distance from the boundaries
Input Hydro Edge (optional)	within the drainage areas and to all cells outside of the
HydroEdge 🗾 🖻	drainage area features.
Channel Buffer Distance in Meters (optional) 100	<ul> <li>Zone 2: Shallow Concentrated. All cells that are not in Zone 1 or 3.</li> </ul>
	Zone 3: Channel Flow. All cells within the Channel Buffer Distance (if no channel buffer distance was specified, it includes only the channel grid cells). This will overwrite some cells within Zone 1 that overlay channel buffer cells.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output TR55 Zone grid. There are no Channel Flow zone since the input HydroEdge feature class does not have any "CHANNEL" features.



## 2. Compute Time of Concentration

This tool uses as input the TR55 Zone Grid generated by the previous tool – the zone grid defines the equation to use for each cell to compute the time of travel for that cell. The tool then generates the longest flow path using the time of travel grid as weight to obtain the longest time of travel associated to each input Drainage Area feature (i.e. time of concentration) and its associated flow path.

Other input grids (dimensionless slope, 2-year 24 hours rainfall in inches, Manning's N) are parameters used in some of the equations. The input surface grid must have a value of 1 in the paved area – it is used to determine which equation to use as well.

Additional parameters used in the equation are specified in the attributes table of Hydro Edge for the features having HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC='CHAN' (optional input): MANNINGSN, WETPERIFT, CSAREAFT2.

• Add the Flow Direction grid (fdr), slope grid (slopefpf), the 2-year 24-hour rainfall grid (yr2hr24prec, the Mannings' N grid (manningsn) and the surface pavement grid (paved) into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.

#### Notes

The slope grid was derived from the input elevation grid using the Slope tool to compute the slope in percent and dividing the resulting grid by 100 to generate the dimensionless slope grid slopefpf.

The 2-year 24-hour rainfall grid used in this example is a constant grid where all cells have for value 5 inches.

The surface pavement grid was built based on the NLCD for Florida by settings the categories 23 and 24 (Developed, Medium Intensity and Developed High Intensity) as paved. Mannings' N grid was built as a constant grid of value 0.02.

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > Time of Concentration > Compute Time of Concentration.** 

🔨 Compute Time of Concentration	
Input Drainage Area	Compute Time of Concentration
Catchment 🗾 🔁	
Input TR55 Zone Grid	Computes a Time of Travel (Tt) grid defining the travel
TR55Zone 🗹 🖻	time in hours to traverse each cell and generates the
Input Flow Direction Grid	Longest Flow Path using the Time of Travel grid as weight grid. Computes the Time of Concentration for
fdr 🔽 🔁	each input Drainage Area polygon feature.
Input Slope (ft/ft)	5 1 7 5
slopefpf 🗾 🔁	The time of concentration (Tc) is defined as the time for
Input 2-Year Rainfall Grid (Inches)	runoff to travel from the hydraulically most distant point
yr2hr24prec 🗾 🖻	of the drainage area to the outlet of the drainage area. The time of concentration is computed by summing all
Input Manning's N Grid	the travel times for consecutive components of the
manningsn 🗾 🔁	drainage conveyance system.
Input Surface Pavement Grid	
paved 🗹 🛃	The time of concentration is an important variable since
Output Travel Time Grid	it influences the shape and peak of the runoff
C: \Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeofConcentration\Layers\TtGrid	hydrograph. Urbanization usually decreases the time of concentration, thereby increasing the peak discharge.
Output Longest Flow Path	However, the time of concentration can be increased as
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeofConcentration\TimeOfConcentration.gdb\Layers\LongestFlowPath	a result of ponding behind small or inadequate drainage
Input Hydro Edge (optional)	systems, including storm drain inlets and road culverts,
HydroEdge 🗾 🔁	or as a result of land slope reduction from grading.
	•
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates 2 outputs:

- Travel time grid
- Longest Flow Path (based on travel time)

It populates the field Tc (Time of Concentration) for the input Drainage Area (Catchment) features and output Longest Flow path features.

	Attributes	of Catch	ment							
Г	HydrolD	GridID	IsPitted	June	tionID	NextDownID	GroupID	IsTerminal	Tc	^
E	534	261	1	<null></null>		<null></null>	981	<null></null>	46.502636	
	535	296	1 •	<null></null>		<null></null>	981	<null></null>	77.158035	
	536	303	1	<null></null>		<null></null>	986	<null></null>	44.025311	
	537	307	1 •	<null></null>		<null></null>	981	<null></null>	93.74102	
	538	321	1	<null></null>		<null></null>	986	<null></null>	54.525864	×
<										>
	Record:	14 4	1 🕨 🕅	5	ihow: Al	Selected	Records (1	out of 23 Selecte	d)	Optior

Tab	le									X
°	-   뭡 -   <mark>┗</mark>	a 🛃 🖂	⊕ ² ×							
Ca	tchment									×
	HydroID *	GridID	MinElev	MaxElev	IsDone	IsPitted	GroupID	IsTerminal	Tc	-
E	534	261	21.88	76.17	1	1	962	0	212.82	
	535	296	17.11	48.31	1	1	962	0	345.24	
	536	303	16.96	73.72	1	1	965	0	207.57	
	537	307	13.82	44.81	1	1	962	0	440.56	<b>–</b>
₹	500					iii			•	
ŀ	• •	<b>1 → →</b>		(0 out of 23	Selected)					
Lo	ongestFlowPath	Catchm	ient							

			Attribut	es of	LongestF	low	Path							$\mathbf{X}$		
			OBJECT	rid *	Shape *	S	hape_L	ength	Hydr	oID	DrainID	T	;	~		
		E		1	Polyline		18226.	.601718		1262	535	77.1	58035			
					Polyline			952365		1263	536		25311			
		Ц			Polyline			850635		1264	534		02636			
		Ш		4	Polyline		9690	0.21428		1265	547	17.8	39538	~		
			Record	4: I4	•	1	F FI	Show	: All	Sele	ted F	Records	(1 out	-		
Tab	le															×
*	-	Ð	-   -		A 📲	$\times$										
Lo	ngest	Flo	wPath													X
	OE	JE(	CTID *	Sh	ape *	Sha	ape_L	ength	Hy	/drol	D Dra	inID		Tc		*
Þ			1	Poly	line	1	18226.6	601718		10	72	535	345	.2458	19	
			2	Poly	line	2	24223.9	952365		10	73	536	207	.5733	95	
			3	Poly	line	2	20507.8	350635		10	74	534	212	.8208	347	
			4	Poly	line		9690	.21428		10	75	547	89	.7674	87	
			5	Poly	line		27282	.18613		10	76	537	440	.5610	96	-
			0	D-L.	C		17000 -	******		4.01	77	C 4.4	400	2027	ren.	

(0 out of 23 Selected)

## 3. Compute Travel Time for Preferential Link

1

۶I

I4 - 4

LongestFlowPath

This tool computes the travel times through preferential links by computing the travel times for the Hydro Edge segments of hydraulic type Conduit, Channel and Shallow Concentrated associated to each input Preferential Link feature.

It stores the travel time in 3 fields in the attributes table of the Preferential Link feature class:

- Tt_Pipe: travel time through Hydro Edge associated to preferential link having HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC='CON' (Conduit).

- Tt_Chan: travel time through Hydro Edge associated to preferential link having HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC='CHAN' (Channel).
- Tt_Con: travel time through Hydro Edge associated to preferential link having HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC='SC' (shallow concentrated).

#### Note

The 3 time of travel fields will be populated with non zeros values only for the Preferential Links that are associated to HydroEdges of type Conduit, Channel or Shallow Concentrated. Hence the Preferential Links created with the function Define Overland Preferential Node Link Schema will always have the time of travels sets to 0.

- Add the SinkPolygon and the Preferential Link feature class into the Table of Contents of ArcMap.
- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Time of Concentration > Compute Travel Time for Preferential Link.**
- Specify the input Preferential Link, HydroEdge, and Sink Polygon feature classes as well as the input DEM and click OK.

Compute Travel Time for Preferential Link		
Input Preferential Link PreferentialLink Input Hydro Edge HydroEdge Input Sink Polygon SinkPoly Input DEM	*	Compute Travel Time for Preferential Link Computes travel time through pipes (HYDROEDGE_HYDRAULIC_TYPE_DESC=CONDUIT- CON), channels (CHANNEL-CHAN) and linear structures (SHALLOW CONCENTRATED - SC). Learn more about how Compute Travel Time for Preferential
elev_cm      OK   Cancel Environments (< <hide help)<="" td=""><td>-</td><td>Link (Arc Hydro) works.</td></hide>	-	Link (Arc Hydro) works.

You may get the following error:

Paved field Paved not populated for shallow concentrated HydroEdge with OID=131

This tool requires that the field Paved be populated in the input HydroEdge feature class for the HydroEdge of hydraulic type Shallow Concentrated.

• Populate the field paved with 1 to indicate that the area is developed and rerun the tool.

The field Tt_Con associated to the Shallow Concentrated edges is populated.

Ξ	- 瑁-	<b>-</b> 😽	A Ga	×							
e	ferentialLin	k									
Ī	HydroID	FNID	TNID	IsFlipped	FeatureID1 *	FeatureID2 *	GroupFdr	GroupLink	Tt_Con	Tt_Chan	Tt_Pipe
Γ	919	894	895	0	534	535	<null></null>	<null></null>	0	0	0
Γ	920	895	897	0	535	537	<null></null>	<null></null>	0	0	0
Γ	921	896	899	0	536	539	<null></null>	<null></null>	4.13277	0	0
Ī	922	898	899	0	538	539	<null></null>	<null></null>	100.9819	0	0
Ī	923	897	900	0	537	540	<null></null>	<null></null>	100.9819	0	0
Ī	924	899	901	0	539	541	1	1	112.2850	0	0
I	925	901	903	0	541	543	<null></null>	<null></null>	112.2850	0	0
Ī					1		III				•
4	•	1 •	) II	🔲 🔲 🛛 (0 out	t of 24 Selected)						

## 4. Compute Time of Concentration for Group Basin

This tool computes the time of concentration for a Group Basin and generates the associated Group Longest Flow Path. The time of concentration is stored in the Tc field in both the input Group Basin features and the generated Group Longest Flow Path features.

The tool works on a selected set of Group Basin features or on all features if there is no selected set.

The Group Basin feature class must contain the field HydroID that relates to the field GroupID in the Catchment features, defining the Catchments that belong to a given Group Basin. In addition to GroupID, the Catchment feature class must also have the HydroID field used to relate to the Preferential Link features, the IsTerminal field that indicates whether the Catchment is terminal for the Group and the Tc field storing the time of concentration for the catchment computed with the tool Compute Time of Concentration.

The input Preferential Link feature class must contain the fields FeatureID1 that identifies the origin Catchment and FeatureID2 that identifies the destination Catchment, as well as the fields Tt_Pipe, Tt_Con and Tt_Chan storing time of travels associated to the link. The time of travel fields are created and populated by the tool Compute Time of Travel for Preferential Link.

- Add the GroupBasin feature class into the map.
- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Time of Concentration > Compute Time of Concentration for Group Basin.**
- Specify the input Group Basin, Catchment, Preferential Link and Longest Flow Path feature classes and enter a name for the output Group Longest Flow Path feature class. Click OK.

K Compute Time of Concentration for Group Basin	
Input Group Basin	Compute Time of Concentration for Group
GroupBasin 💌 🖻	Basin
Input Catchment	
Catchment 🗾 🔁	Computes time of concentration for each input Group
Input Preferential Link	Basin feature and generates associated Group Longest Flow Path. Time of concentration for a Group Basin is
PreferentialLink 🗾 🔁	computed as the longest travel time from each catchment
Input Longest Flow Path	in the Group Basin to the outlet of the Group Basin.
LongestFlowPath 💌 🔁	
Output Group Longest Flow Path	The time of travel from each catchment within the group is
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeofConcentration\TimeOfConcentration.gdb\Layers\GroupLongestFlowPath	computed by adding up the times of concentration of each
	catchment in that group that are on the preferential path to the outlet with the travel times computed for the
	preferential links between those catchments.
· ·	▼
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates the output GroupLongestFlowPath feature class.

	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydrolD	DrainID	Tc
2	1	Polyline	966.898628	67	176736	10.073521
	2	Polyline	148.994949	68	176737	1.233303
ĺ	3	Polyline	1053.969696	69	176740	5.597069
	4	Polyline	1744.949494	70	176741	18.768248
	5	Polyline	2394.924241	71	176743	15.021818
	6	Polyline	2221.959023	72	176744	10.227539
	7	Polyline	3069.777054	73	176745	23.887508
	8	Polyline	3056.137444	74	176746	15.274893
]	9	Polyline	1516.204312	75	176748	6.517084



The tool populates the Tc field in the Group Basin feature class.

OBJECTID *	Shape *	GroupID	Shape_Length	Shape_Area	Tc	HYDROID
13	Polygon	176686	12420	2681225	23.887508	176745
9	Polygon	176672	7970	1656025	18.768248	176741
14	Polygon	176726	12680	2726675	15.274893	176746
11	Polygon	176677	7570	1860625	15.021818	176743
12	Polygon	176679	6770	622600	10.227539	176744
4	Polygon	176662	3430	254250	10.073521	176736
16	Polygon	176732	6450	774200	6.517084	176748
8	Polygon	176671	3680	67125	5.597069	176740

Tab	le					X
°	] •   🗄 •   🏪	🛃 🛛 🚭	×			
Gro	oupLongestFlow	/Path				×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	Shape_Length	HydroID	DrainID	Tc
Þ	1	Polyline	67352.348534	1095	962	903.194749
	2	Polyline	35057.732214	1096	964	477.928638
	3	Polyline	49051.285681	1097	965	567.189639
	4	Polyline	29049.536777	1098	966	328.996609
	5	Polyline	25195.129855	1099	967	379.819646
Gr	oupLongestFlov	L → →   wPath	🔲 🥅   (0 out of !	5 Selected)		

## Green and Ampt Toolset

This toolset contains a set of tools supporting Green and Ampt modeling. You are going to use the data from the directory DataGP\GreenAmpt in this section.

- Copy the data into your target directory (e.g. Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt).
- Open a new map document and add the subwatershed feature class and the TimeSeries and VariableDefinition tables. Save the map as GreenAmpt.mxd.

## 1. Accumulate Incremental TimeSeries

This tool allows accumulating the time series steps from the input incremental time series associated to each input subwatershed feature. For each feature in the input Subwatershed feature class, the function retrieves the specified associated incremental time series steps for the requested interval. It accumulates the time steps and stores them as a new time series of the specified output type in the target time series table.

- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Accumulate Incremental TimeSeries**.
- Specify the Subwatershed feature class you want to process and its associated TimeSeries and VariableDefinition tables. The TimeSeries table stores the time series steps while the VariableDefinition table defines the available time series variables.
- Specify the source and target TS Type IDs. The Source TS Type ID must be associated to an incremental time series (i.e. DataType = Incremental in VariableDefinition table).
- Specify the start and end date/time for the time series to accumulate (e.g. 1/1/2001 to 1/2/2001 for the tutorial data cannot be left blank) as well as the target Time Series table and click OK.

Accumulate Incremental TimeSeries	- • •
Input Subwatershed	<u>^</u>
Subwatershed	- 🔁
Input Time Series Table	
TIMESERIES	- 🔁
Input Variable Definition Table	_
VariableDefinition	- 🔁
Source Time Series Variable ID	
4-Subwatershed SCS TII 24 Hr, 100-yr Design Rainfall	-
Target Time Series Variable ID	
5-Subwatershed SCS TII 24 Hr, 100-yr Excess Rainfall	-
Starting Time [mm/dd/yyyy]	
1/1/2001	
Ending Time [mm/dd/yyyy]	
1/2/2001	
Output Target TSTable	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\GreenAmpt.gdb\TSTARGET	
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

For each input subwatershed feature, the tool accumulates the incremental time steps of the specified type for the selected period and stores the accumulated steps in the target time series table.

	· -   ₽ -   ₽	1 + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +				
TS	TARGET					
	OBJECTID *	FeatureID *	VarID *	TsTime *	TsValue	-
۲	1	2	5	1/1/2001	0	
	2	2	5	1/1/2001 12:10:00 AM	0.025	
	3	2	5	1/1/2001 12:20:00 AM	0.075	
	4	2	5	1/1/2001 12:30:00 AM	0.15	-
	5	2		1/1/2001 12:40:00 AM	0.25	
	6	2	5	1/1/2001 12:50:00 AM	0.375	
	7	2	5	1/1/2001 1:00:00 AM	0.525	
	8	2	5	1/1/2001 1:10:00 AM	0.704163	•
ŀ	• • 1	► ►I 🗐 🗏	(0 out o	f 580 Selected)		

## 2. Create Green and Ampt Parameter Rasters

This tool allows creating parameter rasters based on an input Soil Landuse polygon created by intersecting a soil feature class with a landuse feature class using the Intersect Areas geoprocessing tool for example, and the associated Soil and Landuse lookup tables. The optional input DEM is used to set the cell size for the output rasters. If it not set, the default raster environment will be used.

• Add the SLU feature class as well as the LandUseLookup and SoilLookup table into the Table of Contents of ArcMap. Add the cst1grid grid that you will use to set the raster environment.

Create Green and Ampt Parameter Rasters	- • •
Input Soil Landuse Polygon	~
SLU	- 🖻
Input Soil Lookup Table	
SoilLookup	- 🖻
Input LandUse Lookup Table	
LanduseLookup	- 🖻
Output DCIA Grid (optional)	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\DCIAGrid	
Output Percent Impervious Grid (optional)	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\PctImpGrid	<b>2</b>
Output Hydraulic Conductivity Grid (optional)	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\KSatGrid	<b>2</b>
Output Soil Storage Grid (optional)	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\SStGrid	<u></u>
Output Soil Suction Grid (optional)	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\SSuGrid	<b>2</b>
Output Porosity Grid (optional)	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\PorosityGrid	<b>2</b>
Input DEM (optional)	
cst1grid	- 🖻
	-
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > Create Green and Ampt Parameter Rasters**.

The Input Soil Landuse Polygon must contain 2 fields that will be used to join with respectively a Landuse and a Soil lookup tables. The names of these fields are currently read from the configuration xml. The default names are MUKEY for the SoilCode field and FLUCCSCODE for the LandUseCode field and can be modified in the configuration xml.

The Input Soil Lookup table must contain the SoilCode field (e.g. MUKEY) as well as the Ksat, Porosity, SSt and SSu fields.

0		<b>-</b> 💦 🛛 🖓 🖡	<i>.</i>								E
0			^								
Soi	ilLookup										>
	OBJECTID_	TEXTURE_DE	MUKEY *	COMP_NAME	MUNAME	HYDGRP	Ksat	Porosity	SSt	SSu	-
	1	fine sand	1017080	Adamsville	Adamsville soils and Urban land - 0 to 5 percent slopes	С	13.03937	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	
	2	fine sand	1384380	Adamsville	Adamsville fine sand	С	13.03937	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	
	3	fine sand	1406969	Adamsville	Adamsville fine sand	С	13.03937	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	1
	4	fine sand	1414061	Adamsville	Adamsville fine sand - 0 to 5 percent slopes	С	13.03937	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	1
	5	fine sand	1425021	Adamsville	Adamsville fine sand	С	13.03937	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	1
	6	fine sand	1425038	Adamsville	Adamsville-Urban land complex	С	13.03937	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	]
	7	fine sand	321056	Adamsville	Adamsville fine sand	С	13.002363	0.42	5.940158	2.047244	•
•										Þ	
ŀ	• •	0 🕨 🖬 📘	🔲   (0 ou	t of 907 Selected)							

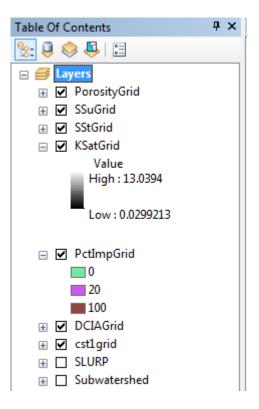
The Landuse Lookup table must contain the LanduseCode field (e.g. FLUCCSCODE) as well as the DCIA and PctImp (Percent Impervious) fields.

abl							X
	・  碧・  �� duseLookup	N 🖓 🖸 📲 🗙					×
	OBJECTID *	Gdescript	Man	DCIA	FLUCCSCODE *	PctImp	
T	1	Residential-Low Density	0.16	20	1100	20	
T	2	Low Density Under Construction	0.16	20	1190	20	1
I	3	Residential-Med Density	0.13	25	1200	25	1
I	4	Med Density Under Construction	0.13	25	1290	25	1
Ι	5	Residential-High Density	0.08	50	1300	50	1
Ì	6	Commercial	0.05	85	1400	85	1
I	7	Commercial And Services Under Construction	0.05	85	1490	85	1
I	8	Industrial	0.07	72	1500	72	1 -
I∢ ai	↓ ( nduseLookup)	0 ► ►     □ □   (0 out of 64 Selected)					

The tool will join the attributes table of the input Soil Landuse Polygon with the Landuse and Soil lookup tables and generate parameter raster for each requested output grid parameter. The outputs are optional and will not be generated if left blank.

• Click OK.

The new parameter grids are added into the map.



### 3. Compute Green and Ampt Parameters

This tool allows computing the Green and Ampt parameters for an input polygon feature class using the grids generated with the tool Create Green and Ampt Parameter Raster.

- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Compute Green and Ampt Parameters**.
- Select as Input Subwatershed the polygon feature class for which you want to populate the Green and Ampt parameters. This feature class must contain the HydroID field and it must be populated with unique values. Click OK.

Compute Green and Ampt Parameters	- • •
Input Subwatershed	<u>^</u>
Subwatershed	- 🖻
Input DCIA Grid (optional)	
DCIAGrid	- 🔁
Input Percent Impervious Grid (optional)	
PctImpGrid	- 🖻
Input Hydraulic Conductivity Grid (optional)	
KSatGrid	- 🖻
Input Soil Storage Grid (optional)	
SStGrid	- 🖻
Input Soil Suction Grid (optional)	
SSuGrid	- 🔁
Input Porosity Grid (optional)	
PorosityGrid	- 🖆
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool computes the average value of each requested parameter by performing a zonal statistics operation on each grid using HydroID to define the zones in the input Subwatershed feature class. The Green Ampt fields are created if they do not already exist and populated for each polygon feature.

Ta	зb	le						
	🗄 •   🖶 •   🏪 🚮 🖸 🐠 🗙							
S	Subwatershed							
Г	Ι	PctImp	DCIA	KSat	SSt	SSu	Porosity	
Г	►	0.62406	0.62406	6.148274	0.47877	3.256793	0.487379	
		2.817712	2.817712	3.489764	2.424478	2.86606	0.487986	
		13.840719	13.840719	5.816635	1.695227	3.032541	0.47056	
		0.580607	0.580607	2.193951	1.018519	3.909375	0.523217	
E	★							
I ← ← 1 → → I I ■ ■ (0 out of 4 Selected)								
6	Su	ibwatershed	J					

## 4. Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall

This tool allows computing the Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall time series for the selected input subwatershed features using an associated Soil Landuse Precipitation polygon feature class (i.e. SLURP) and Soil and Landuse lookup tables.

- Select the subwatershed features of interest.
- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall**.
- Click Spatial Parameters and select the input Subwatershed and SLURP feature classes, as well as the associated Soil and Landuse Lookup tables.

#### Required fields

- Subwatershed
- HydroID
- Name

#### SLURP

- HydroID
- KeyFrom (HydroID of associated subwatershed)
- PctFrom (Percent of area from associated subwatershed)
- MUKEY (SoilCode may be modified)
- FLUCCSCODE (LandUseCode may be modified)
- Soil Lookup table
- MUKEY (Soil key field)
- KSat
- Sst (Soil storage)
- Ssu (Soil suction)

#### Landuse Lookup table

- FLUCCSCODE (Land use key field)
- PctImp
- DCIA

#### Note

You can modify the names of the soil key and landuse key field used in your current session by updating the active configuration. You need to modify the Name attribute of the corresponding ApField in the ApLayer of interest under the MapViews node you are currently using.

If you want to modify the default configuration for all new ArcMap/ArcCatalog sessions, you need to edit the XML configuration file ArcHydroTools.xml located in the ArcHydro/bin folder (Make sure you back it up first). In that file, you need to edit the ApFields for the ApLayers defined under the TemplateView node.

Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall	- • ×
Spatial Parameters     Input Subwatershed	^ 
Subwatershed	- 🖻
Input Soil Landuse Precipitation Polygon	
SLURP	- 🖆
Input Soil Lookup Table	
SoilLookup	- 🖻
Input LandUse Lookup Table	
LanduseLookup	- 🖻
<ul> <li>Time Series Parameters</li> <li>Green and Ampt Coefficients</li> <li>Output Parameters</li> </ul>	
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

• Click Time Series Parameters and select the input Time Series table and Time Series Type Info table associated to the subwatershed. Enter the time series type for input rainfall (has to point to a cumulative type, e.g. design S-curve, or incremental type) and for the output excess rainfall type. Both should be defined in VariableDefinition. Specify the start date/time and end date/time for the time series only if the input time series is incremental and the Design Rain Constant is set to 1. The Design Rain Constant is a multiplier that can be applied to an existing time series to get the design conditions based on a unit hydrograph. The Starting Time and Ending Time parameters will be ignored in all other cases and may be left blank.

🔨 Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall	- • •
	*
* Time Series Parameters Input Time Series Table	
TIMESERIES	- 🖻
Input Variable Definition Table	_
VariableDefinition	- 🖻
Rainfall Time Series Variable ID	
4-Subwatershed SCS TII 24 Hr, 100-yr Design Rainfall	-
Excess Rainfall Time Series Variable ID	
5-Subwatershed SCS TII 24 Hr, 100-yr Excess Rainfall	-
Starting Time [mm/dd/yyyy]	
1/1/2001	
<ul> <li>Ending Time [mm/dd/yyyy]</li> </ul>	
1/2/2001	
Design Rain Constant	
	1
* Green and Ampt Coefficients	
Voltput Parameters	-
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

• Click Green and Ampt Coefficients and enter the coefficients. The values specified will be saved in the parameters EffectivePorosityCoefficient, HydraulicConductivityCoefficient and EffectiveSaturationCoefficient under the ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation) in the XML configuration associated with the map document in ArcMap. These values will be used by default the next time the tool is run.

🔨 Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall	- • ×
	*
* Time Series Parameters	
* Green and Ampt Coefficients Effective Porosity	
	0.9
Hydraulic Conductivity	
	0.5
Effective Saturation	
	0.15
¥ Output Parameters	-
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

- Click Output Parameters and specify the output Time Series target table. It is recommended to store the results in a separate time series table to improve performance and ease maintenance. When "Create Time Series for SLURP" is checked, the tool will create an excess rainfall time series for the SLURP features in addition to the time series created for the subwatershed features. At this point ICPR cannot take advantage of these computations so they might be of use only for testing purposes. In general, this should not be checked as it will significantly increase the processing time. The "Output Timestep Increment" parameter allows specifying the increments for the output time series. A value of 1 means that the same time steps will be used. A value of 2 that every other time steps will be used, etc.
- Check "Export to RAI" and specify the directory where the resulting RAI files should be exported. Click OK. These files will be used by the Export to ICPR tools. The path will be stored in the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/RAIDirectory in the XML configuration associated with the map document in ArcMap.

Compute Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall
* Spatial Parameters
★ Time Series Parameters
Output Parameters     Output Target TSTable
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\GreenAmpt.gdb\TSTARGETExcess
Create Time Series for SLURP (optional)
Output Timestep Increment (optional)
1
Export to RAI (optional)
RAI Path (optional)
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

The tool creates if needed and populates the following fields in the SLURP layer:

- PctImp
- DCIA
- KSat
- Sst (Soil storage)
- Ssu (Soil suction)
- Porosity

The tool creates and populates the output Target TSTable table with the excess rainfall time series associated to the input subwatershed features. If Create Time Series for SLURP is checked, it also creates an excess rainfall time series for the input SLURP features.

The resulting RAI files (if that option was selected) storing the excess rainfall information are exported into the location defined as RAI Path. The RAI path is stored in the configuration so that it will be proposed to the user as default when running the Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall tool.

P53741.rai
P53742.rai
P53743.rai
P53744.rai

TS	TARGETExcess					>
	OBJECTID *	FeatureID *	VarID *	TsTime *	TsValue	
۲	1	2	5	1/1/2001	0	
	2	2	5	1/1/2001 12:10:00 AM	0.000126	
	3	2	5	1/1/2001 12:20:00 AM	0.000377	
	4	2	5	1/1/2001 12:30:00 AM	0.015515	
	5	2	5	1/1/2001 12:40:00 AM	0.051178	
	6	2	5	1/1/2001 12:50:00 AM	0.103192	
	7	2	5	1/1/2001 1:00:00 AM	0.219574	ι.,

#### Note

The number of digits used for rounding the excess rainfall values is retrieved from the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/RoundingConstant in the active configuration. The rounding defaults to 3.

## 5. Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Parameters

#### Warning

This function works in ArcMap only. It does not work in ArcCatalog.

This tool creates the ICPR XML file required to run ICPR with the Green and Ampt option. This option uses RAI files storing information on rainfall, not excess rainfall (i.e. losses have not been taken into account). These RAI files may be created with the Export SCurve to RAI function available under Attribute Tools > Timer Series Processing. The Export tool will copy the files from the user-specified location.

Since the Green and Ampt computation will be performed by ICPR, the ICPR XML file must contain, in addition to information on the subwatersheds, data on the associated soils, landuses and precipitation.

#### • Double-click **H&H Modeling > Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Parameters**.

🔨 Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Parameters	- • •
Input Subwatershed	*
Subwatershed	- 🖻
Input Soil Landuse Precipitation Polygon	
SLURP	- 🖻
Input Soil Lookup Table	
SoilLookup	- 🖻
Input LandUse Lookup Table	
LanduseLookup	- 🖻
RAI Path - Green and Ampt Parameters	
C: \Tutorial \Results \GPTools \Green Ampt \Layers \rai	<b>2</b>
Export Location for ICPR XML - Green and Ampt Parameters	
DefaultLocation\Layers_ExportICPRGAParams.xml	<b>2</b>
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

- Specify the input Subwatershed feature class. It must contain the fields HydroID and Name.
- Specify the associated input Soil Land Use Precipitation polygon as well as the Soil and Landuse lookup tables.

The SLURP polygon must contain the following fields:

- HydroID
- KeyFrom
- SoilCode (set by default to MUKEY)
- LandUseCode (set by default to FLUCCSCODE)
- PctImp

The Soil table must contain the following fields;

- SoilCode (set by default to MUKEY)
- KSat
- Sst (Soil storage)
- Ssu (Soil suction)
- Porosity

The Landuse table must contain the following fields:

- LandUseCode (set by default to FLUCCSCODE)
- PctImp
- DCIA
  - Specify the location of the RAI files previously generated. This location defaults to the value of the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/RAIDirectorySCurve in the configuration XML associated to the map document (if relevant).

The tool retrieves the name of the control file for the export from the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/ICPRExportControlGAParams in the active configuration. This file must exist in the ArcHydro/bin directory. It defaults to ICPRExportControlGAParams.xml.

The tool retrieves the name of the transformation file for the export from the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/GWIS2ICPRXMLGAParams in the active configuration. This file must exist in the ArcHydro/bin directory. It defaults to GWIS2ICPRXMLGAParams.xsl

The tool generates the intermediate file GIS2ICPRTmpFileGAParams.xml as well as the output ICPR XML. It copies the RAI files into the RAI subdirectory located in the same location as the exported XML and saves the value of the RAI Path in the parameter

ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/RAIDirectorySCurve in the XML associated with the map document in ArcMap.

The tool sets the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/XMLTargetDirectory to the export path for the XML.

#### Note

The tool retrieves the 2 following Green and Ampt coefficient used to generate the Export XML from the active configuration:

- EffectivePorosityCoefficient
- HydraulicConductivityCoefficient

## 6. Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Rainfall Excess

#### Warning

This function works in ArcMap only. It does not work in ArcCatalog.

This tool creates the ICPR XML file required to run ICPR with the Impervious SCS option. Since the losses are computed using the Create Green and Ampt Excess Rainfall tool, the resulting excess rainfall stored in the .rai files is used in ICPR to run with the SCS option.

The export process will export the GIS data into an XML with the required structure for ICPR and will copy rai files previously generated into the target directory where the XML file is being generated.

Since the excess rainfall is going to be used as input into ICPR modeling, ICPR does NOT need to perform loss calculations. This will be accomplished by "tricking" ICPR by defining that each subwatershed has 100% DCIA. This also means that it is not necessary to export information for each SLURP, but just subwatershed information.

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Rainfall Excess**.

🔨 Export to ICPR Green and Ampt Rainfall Excess	<b>X</b>
Input Subwatershed	^
Subwatershed 🗾 🔁	
RAI Path - Green and Ampt Excess Rain	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GreenAmpt\Layers\rai	
Export Location for ICPR XML - Green and Ampt Excess Rain	
DefaultLocation\Layers_ExportICPRGAExcess.xml	
	Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>	

- Specify the input Subwatershed feature class and the location of the RAI files previously generated. This layer must contain the fields HydroID and Name.
- Specify the path to the existing RAI files storing the associated excess rainfall. This location defaults to the value of the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/RAIDirectory.
- Enter a path and name for the output ICPR XML file for Green and Ampt Excess Rain and click OK.

The tool retrieves the name of the control file for the export from the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/ICPRExportControlGAExcess in the active configuration. This file must exist in the ArcHydro/bin directory. It defaults to ICPRExportControlGAExcess.xml.

The tool retrieves the name of the transformation file for the export from the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/GWIS2ICPRXMLGAExcess in the active configuration. This file must exist in the ArcHydro/bin directory. It defaults to GWIS2ICPRXMLGAExcess.xsl

The tool generates the intermediate file GIS2ICPRTmpFileGAParams.xml as well as the output ICPR XML. It copies the rai files into the RAI subdirectory located in the same location as the exported XML and saves the value of the RAI Path in the parameter

ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/RAIDirectory in the XML associated with the map document in ArcMap.

The tool sets the parameter ApFunction(GreenAmptCalculation)/XMLTargetDirectory to the export path for the XML.

# Map to Map Toolset

Prerequisites

- HEC-HMS
- HEC-RAS
- HEC-DSSVUE

Copy the DataGP\TimeSeries folder (e.g. into Results\GPTools\TimeSeries). Open a new ArcMap and add the super_radar_cal feature class and the TIMESERIES and VariableDefinition tables. Save the map document as DSS.mxd.

## 1. Export to DSS

This tool allows exporting time series data associated to input features of interest into the DSS format. The input feature class for which the time series needs to be exported must contain the name field.

- Open the attributes table of super_radar_cal and select Options > Add Field.
- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Map to Map > Export to DSS**.
- Specify the inputs/outputs as shown below and click OK.

K Export to DSS
Input TS Layer
super_radar_cal 🗾 🔁
Input Time Series Table
TIMESERIES 🗾 🖻
Input Variable Definition Table
VariableDefinition 🗾 🚰
Time Series Type ID
3-Nexrad Rainfall 👻
Starting Time [mm/dd/yyyy]
10/13/2001
Ending Time [mm/dd/yyyy] 10/14/2001
DSS File for Export
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\super_radar_cal.dss
☑ Generate Gage File (optional)
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>

The tool generate the output DSS file (*.dss) and the gage file (.gage) if requested. The DSS file may be opened using the HEC-DSSVUE application that may be downloading from HEC web site.

	super_radar_cal.dss
$\times$	super_radar_cal.dss.msg
	super_radar_cal.gage

## 2. Import from DSS

This tool allows importing time series data in the DSS format into the Arc Hydro time series format in a geodatabase.

- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Map to Map > Import from DSS**.
- Specify the input Time Series layer. Select the super_radar_cal as TS Layer and its associated VariableDefinition table. Specify the type of time series variable to import and the source DSS File for import. Rename the output Time Series table TIMESERIESDSS and click OK.

Number from DSS	- • ×
Input TS Layer	A
super_radar_cal	- 2
Input Variable Definition Table	
VariableDefinition	- 2
Time Series Type ID 3-Nexrad Rainfall DSS File for Import	•
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\super_radar_cal.dss	
Output Time Series Table	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\timeseries.mdb\TIMESERIES	DSS 🔁
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool imports the requested data into a new time series table in the Arc Hydro format.

IESDSS JECTID *	FeatureID *	1/ ID +				×
	FeatureID *	Maril D +				
		VarID *	TSTime *	TsValue	TsTime_dbl *	
13526	9110	3	10/13/2001 5:00:00 AM	0	37177.208333	1
13527	9110	3	10/13/2001 6:00:00 AM	0.269	37177.25	
13528	9110	3	10/13/2001 7:00:00 AM	0.906	37177.291667	
13529	9110	3	10/13/2001 8:00:00 AM	1.047	37177.333333	]
13530	9110	3	10/13/2001 9:00:00 AM	0	37177.375	
I						
	13528 13529 13530	13528     9110       13529     9110       13530     9110       24280     ► ► ■	13528     9110     3       13529     9110     3       13530     9110     3       24280     ▶ ▶     ▶	13528       9110       3       10/13/2001 7:00:00 AM         13529       9110       3       10/13/2001 8:00:00 AM         13530       9110       3       10/13/2001 9:00:00 AM         24280       ► ►I       ●       (0 out of 24280 Selected)	13528       9110       3       10/13/2001 7:00:00 AM       0.906         13529       9110       3       10/13/2001 8:00:00 AM       1.047         13530       9110       3       10/13/2001 9:00:00 AM       0         24280       ► ►       ●       (0 out of 24280 Selected)	13528       9110       3       10/13/2001 7:00:00 AM       0.906       37177.291667         13529       9110       3       10/13/2001 8:00:00 AM       1.047       37177.333333         13530       9110       3       10/13/2001 9:00:00 AM       0       37177.375         24280       ► ►       ●       ●       ●       ●       ●

#### 3. Run HMS

This tool requires that HEC-HMS be installed on your computer. Refer to the US Army of Engineers web page <u>http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/software/hec-hms/</u> for more information on installing HEC-HMS.

The start and end times may be determined by examining the gage file using HEC-DSSVUE. This application may be downloaded from the US Army Corps of Engineers web site as well (http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/software/hec-dss/hecdssvue.htm).

#### • Double-click **H&H Modeling > Map to Map > Run HMS**.

🔨 Run HMS	
• Input HMS File	Run HMS
• Start Time [mm/dd/yyyy 00:00:00]	The Run HMS tool allows running an existing HEC-HMS project using the run parameters specified by the user.
• End Time [mm/dd/yyyy 00:00:00]	HEC-HMS must be installed on the computer. Refer to the US Army Corps of Engineers web page for more
Time Interval	information on how to install HEC-HMS ( ).
HMS Run Name	Learn more about how Run HMS (Arc Hydro) works.
Run 1	
	÷
OK Cancel Environments	Tool Help

To be developed

## 4. Run RAS

This tool requires that HEC-RAS be installed on your computer. Refer to the US Army of Engineers web page <u>http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/software/hec-ras/</u> for more information on installing HEC-RAS.

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > Map to Map > Run RAS**.

Nun RAS			×
Input RAS File (Current plan will be run!)	*	Run RAS	Â
Output SDF File	Ŧ	Runs an existing HEC-GeoRAS project. HEC-RASS must be installed on the computer. Refer to the US Army Corps of Engineers web page for more information on how to install HEC-RAS (http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/software/hec-ras/).	H H
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help		Tool Help	

To be developed

#### 5. SDF to XML

This allows generating an .SDF file generated by HEC-GeoRAS into an XML file that can then be imported into a geodatabase.

- Double-click **H&H Modeling > Map to Map > SDF to XML**.
- Browse to the input SDF file to convert. Specify the name of the output XML file and click OK.

🐔 SDF to XML	
Click error and warning icons for more information	SDF to XML
Input SDF File C:\Backup\Projects\map2map\geoRAS_02\ras01.RASexport2.sdf Output XML File C:\Backup\Projects\map2map\geoRAS_02\GIS2RAS.RASImporttestcd.xml	The SDF to XML tool allows exporting a SDF file generated by HEC-RAS into an XML file. This tool requires that HEC-GeoRAS be installed on the computer.
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help

The tool generates an XML file than can be imported into a geodatabase.

## 6. Update RAS Flow

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > Map to Map > Update RAS Flow**.

Npdate RAS Flow	
Click error and warning icons for more information	Update RAS Flow
Input RAS File	
	Updates HEC-RAS flow files based on the HEC-GeoHMS run file and run name.
🚫 Input XS Cut Lines	
XSCutLines	Learn more about how Update RAS Flow (Arc Hydro)
• Input HMS File	works.
HMS Run Name	
Run 1	
Flow Type (optional)	
Steady 👻	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Ψ
OK Cancel Environments << Hide Help	Tool Help
	Tourrep

To be developed

# GeoICPR Toolset

This toolset allow preprocessing the data for the ICPR model and importing result from ICPR into ArcMap. This tool uses the data generated for deranged terrain. These tools worked on simplified (Group) features and require that the ICPR_Node and ICPR_Link feature classes already exist.

- Copy the data from DatatGP\GeoICPR into your target location (e.g. Results\GPTools\GeoICPR).
- Open a new map and add the GroupBasin, GroupNode, GroupLink, HydroEdge, and HydroJunction feature classes into the map.

## 1. Generate ICPR Node

This tool allows generating ICPR Nodes based on input Group Node and Seed Point features. The Seed Point features may be created using the Create ICPR Seed Points tool available on the GeoICPR Tools toolbar installed with the Arc Hydro tools. You are going to create this feature class by exporting the GroupJunction of type NO (Natural Overflow) that intersects Group Link features.

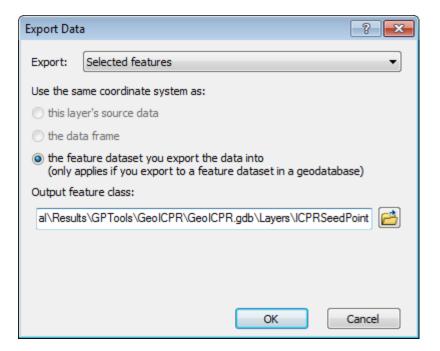
• Click Selection > Select by Location... and specify the following parameters.

Select By Location
Select features from one or more target layers based on their location in relation to the features in the source layer.
Selection <u>m</u> ethod:
select features from 🔹
Target layer(s):
<ul> <li>□ ICPRSeedPoint</li> <li>☑ GroupJunction</li> <li>□ GroupNode</li> <li>□ HydraulicElementPoint</li> <li>□ HydroJunction</li> <li>□ ICPRNode</li> <li>□ GroupLink</li> <li>□ HydroEdge</li> <li>□ ICPRLink</li> <li>□ GroupBasin</li> </ul>
Only show selectable layers in this list
Source layer:
Use selected features (0 features selected)
Spatial selection method:
Target layer(s) features intersect the Source layer feature
Apply a search distance       3000.000000   Meters
Help OK Apply Close

• Click Selection > Select by Attributes... and specify the following parameters. Make sure the Method is set to "Select from current selection."

Select By Attribut	tes	? <mark>-</mark> *
	GroupJunction Only show selectable layers in this list	•
Method: Sel	ect from current selection	•
"OBJECTID" "HydroID" "FType" "Elev" "JUNCTIONID"		
= <> > >= < <= _% ()	Like And Or Not	
	Get Unique <u>Values</u> <u>G</u> o To:	
"FType" = 'NO'	GroupJunction <u>W</u> HERE:	*
Cl <u>e</u> ar	Verify <u>H</u> elp Loa <u>d</u>	Sa <u>v</u> e
	OK <u>A</u> pply	<u>C</u> lose

• Right-click the GroupJunction feature class in the Table of Contents and select Data > Export Data... and export the selected features to the new ICPRSeedPoint feature class in your target GeoICPR.gdb geodatabase.



The tool exports the Group Junctions located on the boundaries between the Group Basins.

Tab	ole					×				
0	🗄 -   碧 -   🖫 🏡 🛛 🐠 🗙									
IC	PRSeedPoint					×				
	OBJECTID* Shape* HydroID FType Elev JUNCTIONID									
	1	Point	978	NO	0.4	825				
	2	Point	979	NO	24.14	833				
	3	Point	981	NO	8.64	842				
	4	Point	983	NO	8.29	870				
	5	Point	984	NO	7.28	871				
I	RSeedPoint	) • • [	<b>—</b>   (0	out of 5 S	elected)					

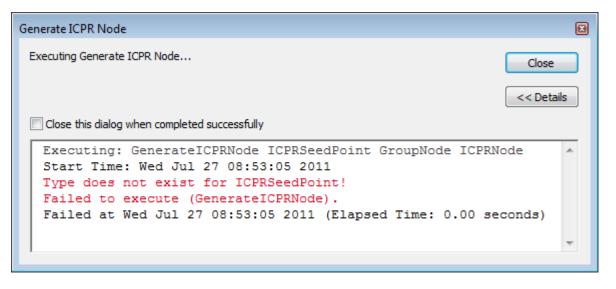
• Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Node**. Specify the inputs ICPR Seed Point, Group Node and ICPR Node feature class.

GeoICPR Tools			<b>-</b> ×
STAGE/AREA		- 4	Post Processing - Help
	Click to create ICPR Seed Points		

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Node**. Specify the inputs ICPR Seed Point, Group Node and ICPR Node feature class.

🔨 Generate ICPR Node	- • •
Input ICPR Seed Point	×
ICPRSeedPoint	- 🖻
Input Group Node (optional)	
GroupNode	- 🖻
Input ICPR Node	
ICPRNode	- 🖻
	-
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool displays an error message indicating that the field TYPE is missing in the input ICPRSeedPoint feature class.



• Add the field TYPE as text to the ICPRSeedPoint feature class and populate it with WEIR for all features.

Tał	ble							×
0	- 🔁 - 🖣	🛃 🛛 🚭	×					
IC	PRSeedPoint							×
	OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydroID	FType	Elev	JUNCTIONID	Туре	
	1	Point	978	NO	0.4	825	WEIR	
	2	Point	979	NO	24.14	833	WEIR	
	3	Point	981	NO	8.64	842	WEIR	
	4	Point	983	NO	8.29	870	WEIR	
	5	Point	984	NO	7.28	871	WEIR	
		) <b>• •</b> • [	0   10	out of 5 S	elected)			
IC	PRSeedPoint							

• Double-click **H&H Modeling** > **GeoICPR** > **Generate ICPR Node**. Specify the inputs ICPR Seed Point, Group Node and ICPR Node feature class.

The tool generates ICPR Node features associated to the ICPR Seed Points of type WEIR and to the Group Node. (STAGE/AREA).

Tak	ole ] •   🔁 •   🍡	<b>S</b> 🖸 🐠	×			X
	PRNode					×
	OBJECTID *	SHAPE *	HydroID	Name	Туре	IsIncluded
F	1	Point	1003	S1003	STAGE/AREA	1
	2	Point	1004	S1004	STAGE/AREA	1
	3	Point	1005	S1005	STAGE/AREA	1
	4	Point	1006	S1006	STAGE/AREA	1
	5	Point	1007	S1007	STAGE/AREA	1
	6	Point	1008	S1008	STAGE/AREA	1
IC	<ul> <li>IPRNode</li> </ul>	1 🕨 🖬 📗	(0)	out of 6	Selected)	

## 2. Generate ICPR Link

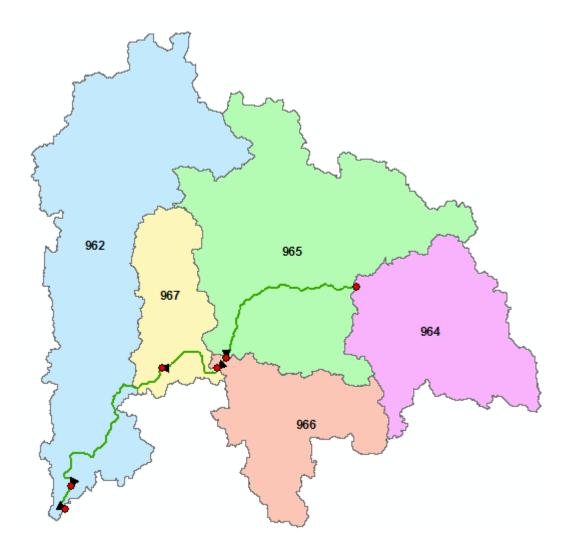
This tool allows generating ICPR Link features defining the connectivity between Group Basins. ICPR Links are generated in the following cases:

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Link**.

K Generate ICPR Link	- • •
Input Group Basin	<u>^</u>
GroupBasin	- 🖻
Input ICPR Seed Point	
ICPRSeedPoint	- 🖻
Input Group Link	
GroupLink	- 🖻
Input Hydro Edge	
HydroEdge	- 🖻
Input Hydro Junction	
HydroJunction	- 🖻
Input Group Junction	
GroupJunction	- 🖻
Input ICPR Node	
ICPRNode	- 🖻
Input Hydraulic Element Point	
HydraulicElementPoint	- 🖻
Input ICPR Link	
ICPRLink	- 🖻
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool generates 5 WEIR ICPR Link associated to the 3 WEIR ICPR Seed Point features.

Table -   昏 -   탁 💦 🖸 🐠 🗙									
ICP	RBasin						>		
	OBJECTID *	SHAPE *	SHAPE_Length	SHAPE_Area	HydroID	Name	Туре		
F	1	Polygon	246540	533098800	1044	BS1036	0		
	2	Polygon	246540	533098800	1045	BS1038	0		
	3	Polygon	124860	256249799.999987	1046	BS1033	0		
	4	Polygon	205080	487181699.999997	1047	BS1037	0		
	5	Polygon	116340	180735299.999996	1048	BS1034	0		
	6	Polygon	91920	134938799.999995	1049	BS1035	0		
IA IC	PRBasin ICPR	l ► ►	🔲 🔲   (0 out of (	5 Selected)					



## 3. Generate ICPR Basin

This tool allows generating ICPR Group Basins based on STAGE/AREA ICPR Nodes and Channel ICPR Links.

- Add the Catchment, Preferential Link, ICPR Basin feature classes and the flow direction grid.
- Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Basin** and specify the inputs as shown in the picture below.

🔨 Generate ICPR Basin	- • •
Input ICPR Node	^
ICPRNode	- 🔁
Input ICPR Link	
ICPRLink	- 🔁
Input Group Basin	
GroupBasin	- 🖻
Input Catchment	
Catchment	- 🖻
Input Preferential Link	
PreferentialLink	- 🔁
Input Flow Direction Grid	
fdr	- 🔁
Input ICPR Basin	
ICPRBasin	- 🖻
OK Cancel Environments.	Show Help >>

The tool generates ICPR Basin for each STAGE/AREA ICPR Nodes. Since there are no ICPR Links of type Channel, the resulting ICPR Basin features are identical to the input Group Basin features. Note that there 2 identical ICPR Basins corresponding to Group Basin 962, one associated to the Group Sink and the other to the terminal boundary node.

• Create a new ICPR Seed Point of type channel on one of the Group Link features. Make the GeoICPR Tools toolbar visible, select CHANNEL in the left dropdown list and click the Create ICPR Seed Points tool.

GeoICPR Tools		- × ×
CHANNEL	✓ PERCOLATION	💌 🛃   Post Processing 🕶 Help
	Click to create ICPR Seed Points	

• Specify the input HydroEdge and HydroJunction feature classes if prompted and click on one of the existing GroupLink to create a new ICPRSeedPoint feature of type Channel.

			~	- Se	Z	5		}
Table								X
클 •   뢉 •   🔓	🚱 🛛 🚭	×						
10000 10 1								x
ICPRSeedPoint								
OBJECTID *	Shape *	HydrolD	FType	Elev	JUNCTIONID	Туре	Name	<u> </u>
	Shape * Point	HydrolD 978	FType NO	Elev 0.4	JUNCTIONID 825	Type WEIR	Name <null></null>	_
OBJECTID *								_
OBJECTID *     1     2	Point	978	NO	0.4	825	WEIR	<nul></nul>	
OBJECTID *     1     2	Point Point	978 979	NO NO	0.4 24.14	825 833	WEIR WEIR	<nul⊳ <nul⊳< td=""><td>_</td></nul⊳<></nul⊳ 	_
OBJECTID* 1 2 3 4	Point Point Point	978 979 981	NO NO NO	0.4 24.14 8.64	825 833 842	WEIR WEIR WEIR	<null> <null> <null></null></null></null>	_
OBJECTID* 1 2 3 4 5	Point Point Point Point	978 979 981 983	NO NO NO NO	0.4 24.14 8.64 8.29	825 833 842 870	WEIR WEIR WEIR WEIR	<null> <null> <null> <null></null></null></null></null>	

The ICPRSeedPoint features of type Channel are used to generate ICPR Node and ICPR Link of type Channel and ICPR Group Basins.

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Node**, keep the defaults and click OK.

The tool generates one additional ICPR Node of type CHANNEL.

Table ⊠ ⊒ +   🗄 +   🖫 🕎 🖸 🗛 🗙						
IC	PRNode					×
	OBJECTID *	SHAPE *	HydroID	Name	Туре	Isincluded
Þ	1	Point	1056	S1056	STAGE/AREA	1
	2	Point	1057	S1057	STAGE/AREA	1
	3	Point	1058	S1058	STAGE/AREA	1
	4	Point	1059	S1059	STAGE/AREA	1
	5	Point	1060	S1060	STAGE/AREA	1
	6	Point	1061	S1061	STAGE/AREA	1
	7	Point	1062	C1062	CHANNEL	1
I ← ← 1 → → I I I out of 7 Selected)						
ÎĊ	PRNode					

• Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Link**, keep the defaults and click OK.

The tool generates one additional ICPR Link of type CHANNEL.

Table 🛛 🔁 - 📲 🖓 🖸 👰 🗙						
ICF	PRLink					>
	OBJECTID *	SHAPE *	SHAPE_Length	HydroID	Name	Туре
F	1	Polyline	3135.548699	1063	W1063	WEIR
	2	Polyline	21410.554686	1064	W1064	WEIR
	3	Polyline	1660.660172	1065	W1065	WEIR
	4	Polyline	9052.051942	1066	W1066	WEIR
	5	Polyline	12877.853753	1067	W1067	WEIR
	6	Polyline	10880.697228	1068	C1068	CHAN
IC	PRLink	L > >1	🔲 🔲   (1 out of (	5 Selected)		

The Channel link connects the ICPR Channel Node to the next downstream STAGE/AREA ICPR Node.

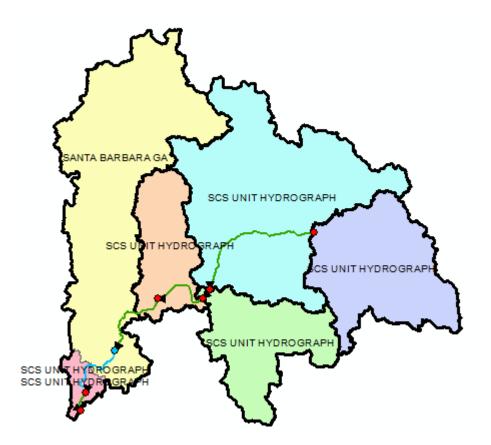


• Double-click **H&H Modeling > GeoICPR > Generate ICPR Basin**, keep the defaults and click OK.

The tool generates one additional ICPR Basin of a different type draining into the mid point of the ICPR Link.

Table 🛛 🔁 -   탑 -   탑 🖓 🖸 🚑 🗙							
ICP	RBasin						:
Т	OBJECTID *	SHAPE *	SHAPE_Length	SHAPE_Area	HydroID	Name	Туре
۲	1	Polygon	227580	505959299.999984	1104	BC1062	SANTA BARBARA GA
	2	Polygon	42000	27139500.000005	1105	BS1059	SCS UNIT HYDROGRAPH
	3	Polygon	42000	27139500.000005	1106	BS1061	SCS UNIT HYDROGRAPH
	4	Polygon	124860	256249799.999997	1107	BS1056	SCS UNIT HYDROGRAPH
	5	Polygon	205080	487181699.999985	1108	BS1060	SCS UNIT HYDROGRAPH
	6	Polygon	116340	180735299.999996	1109	BS1057	SCS UNIT HYDROGRAPH
	7	Polygon	91920	134938800.000009	1110	BS1058	SCS UNIT HYDROGRAPH
٠.							
I → ► I = I (0 out of 7 Selected)							
IC	PRBasin						
~	ArcToolbox	Table					

The ICPR Basin features with HydroIDs 1105 and 1106, displayed in red, are identical. One is associated to the Group Basin sink and the other to the terminal boundary node.



## 4. Export to ICPR

After generating the data required by ICPR, this data can be exported into the input files required by ICPR using the tool Export GIS Data to XML available in the GIS Data Exchange Toolset.

## 5. Import from ICPR

This tool allows importing results from ICPR into geodatabase tables.

• Double-click **H&H Modeling** > **GeoICPR** > **Import from ICPR** and specify the input Model Result Location. Select the input Variable Definition table. Keep the default for the output tables and click OK.

Minimizer Min	×
<ul> <li>Input Model Result Location</li> </ul>	*
	2
Input Variable Definition Table	
VariableDefinition 🔽	2
Output ICPR Node Max Stage (Ft) Table	_
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\DSS.gdb\ICPR_NODEMAX_STAGE_FT	2
Output ICPR Link Max Flow (Cfs) Table	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\DSS.gdb\ICPR_LINKMAX_FLOW_CFS	2
Output ICPR Node Hydrograph Table	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\DSS.gdb\ICPRNodeHydrograph	2
Output ICPR Link Hydrograph Table	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\TimeSeries\DSS.gdb\ICPRLinkHydrograph	2
OK Cancel Environments Show Hel	p >>

The tool imports the results from the ICPR run into the output tables.

# GIS Data Exchange

## XML Exchange Toolset

The GIS Data Exchange toolset contains a set of tools that allow importing/exporting data between a geodatabase and an XML file. For additional information of these tools and their configuration, refer to the document XML Based Spatial Data Exchange User's Guide.



You will export a small geodatabase containing feature classes and tables as an example using tutorial data and control files.

• Copy the directory DataGP\GISDataExchange.

This directory contains a sample geodatabase and control files that will be used for the export/import.

• Open a new map document and add the Watershed and WatershedPoint feature classes into the map. Save the map as Export.mxd for example.

## 1. Export GIS Data to XML

This tool allows exporting layers and tables from the map document or from a geodatabase on the disk into an output XML file based on a configuration file.

• Double-click **GIS Data Exchange** > **Export GIS Data to XML**.

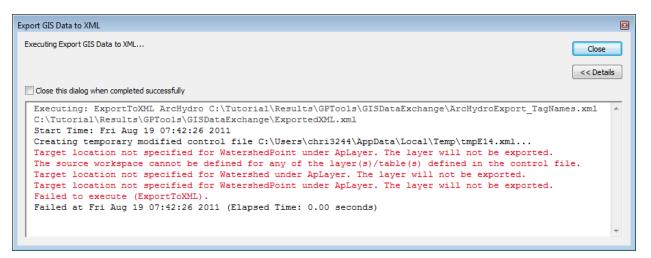
🔨 Export GIS Data to XML		
Application Name	<b>^</b>	Export GIS Data to XML
ArcHydro	-	
Input Export Control XML File	_	Exports data from a geodatabase into an XML file based
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GISDataExchange\ArcHydroExport_TagNames.xml	<b>2</b>	on a predefined configuration file.
Output Export XML File		
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GISDataExchange\ExportedXML.xml	<b>2</b>	Learn more about how Export GIS Data to XML (Arc
		Hydro) works.
	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$	<b>T</b>
OK Cancel Environments	de Help	Tool Help

The Application Name parameter defines the node that will be read in the configuration file (HydroConfig, GeoHMSConfig, etc.) when looking for layers associated to tag names.

The input Export Control XML File defines the data that needs to be exported and how it maps to the output export XML File. There are 2 main ways to define the data that will be exported:

- Using LayerName/TableName
- Using TagName
  - Browse to the control file "" in the directory where you copied the data and specify the output location for the XML file. Click OK.

The tool fails with the following error messages:

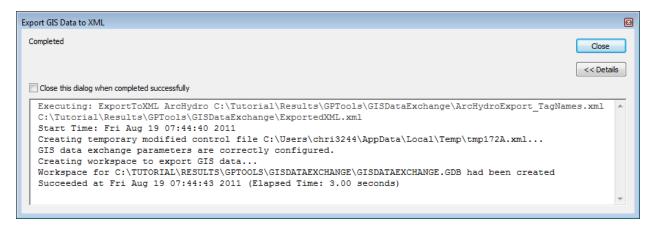


This failure occurred because the control file is using tag names to identify the layer and no layers have been explicitly set yet for the tags. The tags set when using the Arc Hydro tools or when using the Data Management functions.

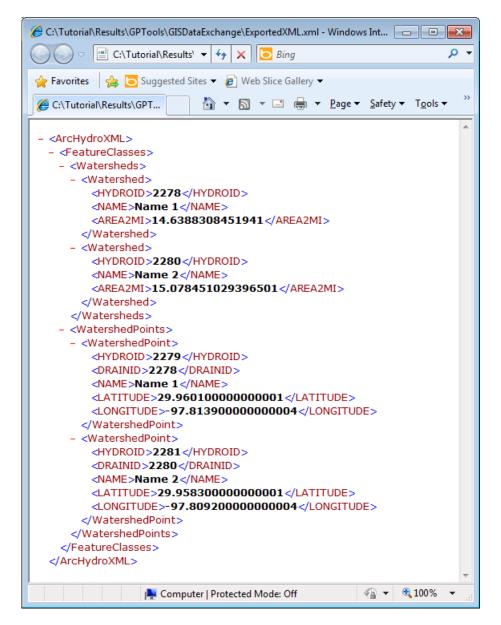
• Select Watershed Processing > Data Management Watershed Delineation on the Arc Hydro toolbar and the tags for Watershed and Watershed Point.

🔮 Data Management	<b>X</b>
Flow Direction Grid	Null
Stream Grid	Null
Snap Stream Grid	Null
Catchment Grid	Null
Adjoint Catchment	Null
Batch Point	Null
Watershed Point	WatershedPoint -
Watershed	Watershed -
Subwatershed Point	Null
Subwatershed	Null
Cataloging Unit Junction	Null
Cataloging Unit Edge	Null
Cataloging Unit Polygon	Null
Global Watershed	Null
Global Watershed Point	Null
Batch Polygon	Null
Point Source	Null
<u>O</u> K <u>H</u>	elp <u>C</u> ancel

• Click OK and then rerun the Export tool.



• Open the export XML file created by the tool and review its content.



You are now going to export additional information on the feature classes so that the resulting XML can be transformed and imported back into a new geodatabase.

## 2. Import from XML

This tool allows importing data from an XML file that meets Esri geodatabase XML schema into a geodatabase. This formatted XML file may be generated by using the tool Transform XML.

- Double-click **GIS Data Exchange > Import from XML**.
- Browse to the input XML file meeting Esri geodatabase schema and specify the name of the new output file geodatabase. Click OK.

The second secon	
Input XML File for Import	Import from XML
C: \Tutorial\Results \GPTools \GISDataExchange \ExportedXML.xml Coutput File Geodatabase (.gdb) C: \Tutorial\Results \GPTools \GISDataExchange \GdbFromXML.gdb	Import from XML allows importing data from an XML file into a geodatabase.
OK         Cancel         Environments         << Hide Help	Tool Help

To be developed

#### 3. Transform XML

This tool allows transforming an input XML file using an input XSL file to produce an output XML file. In particular, this tool can be used to create an XML file that meets Esri geodatabase XML schema and can then be used as input by the Import from XML tool.

- Double-click **GIS Data Exchange** > **Import from XML**.
- Specify the input XML file to process and the input XSL file, as well as the path and name to the output file. Click OK.

Transform XML	
<ul> <li>Input XML File for Transform</li> </ul>	^
	🗃 🥁
<ul> <li>Input XSL File for Transform</li> </ul>	
	🔊 😂 👘
<ul> <li>Output File (With Extension)</li> </ul>	
	<b>2</b>
	<u> </u>
	Help >>

The tool parses the input XML file using the XSL file to create the transformed output file.

To be developed

## Excel Exchange Toolset

## 1. Export Tools Parameters

This tool allows exporting the parameters associated to a specified model or tool into a table that can be later exported to Excel using the Map to Excel tool.

- Double-click **GIS Data Exchange** > **Export Tool Parameters**.
- Browse to the input model or tool whose parameters you want to export to a table (e.g. DEM Reconditioning in the Arc Hydro Tools toolbox and in the Terrain Preprocessing toolset. Keep the default for the output table and click OK.

Kport Tool Parameters	- • •
Input Tool or Model Name	
Toolboxes\System Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tbx\DEMReconditioning	
Output Tool Parameters Table	
C:\Tutorial\Results\GPTools\GISDataExchange\Export.gdb\ToolParams	
	-
OK Cancel Environments	Show Help >>

The tool creates the output table and generates one record for each parameter in the input tool/model that lists the location of the toolbox, the name of the tool, the name of the parameter, whether it is an input or output, its type and its current value.

1	Table	able					
	*== •==	] → 팀· · 팀 정 II 렌 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
	Тоо	IParams					×
	Π	ToolBoxName	ToolName	ParamName	ParamDirection	ParamType	ParamValue
		C:\Program Files (x86)\ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tb;	DEMReconditioning_archydro	in_rawdem_raster	0	0	RawDEM
	. (	C:\Program Files (x86)\ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tb;	DEMReconditioning_archydro	in_agreestream_features	0	0	AgreeStream
	. (	C:\Program Files (x86)\ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tb;	DEMReconditioning_archydro	number_cells_buffer	0	0	5
		C:\Program Files (x86)\ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tb;	DEMReconditioning_archydro	zdrop_smooth	0	0	10
	(	C:\Program Files (x86)\ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tb;	DEMReconditioning_archydro	zdrop_sharp	0	0	1000
	• (	C:\Program Files (x86)\ArcGIS\Desktop10.0\ArcToolbox\Toolboxes\Arc Hydro Tools.tb;	DEMReconditioning_archydro	out_agreedem_raster	1	0	C:\Tutoria/Results\GPTools\GISDataExchange\Layers\AgreeDEM
	٠.						
	н	14 ← 6 → →1   🗐 🗖   (0 out of 6 Selected)					
[	Too	<u>lParams</u>					

## 2. Map to Excel

The Map to Excel tool allows exporting user specified attributes from tables/featureclasses within ArcMap to an Excel spreadsheet. This tool will also export the attributes from input/output layers after execution of the model. The configuration for the export process (name of the worksheet, range, cell etc) is predefined in a configuration XML.

• Double-click **GIS Data Exchange > Map to Excel**.

A function in Arc Hydro has a configuration associated with that function and it becomes part of the mxd as embedded XML resource. Figure 4 shows the configuration xml in the mxd (Run ArcHydro Tools tool bar->ApUtilities->XML Manager to display configuration XML).

XMLViewer - ApUtilities					
Name=ApFunctions, NodeType=Element(1) BaseURI= XPath=FrameworkConfig/HydroConfig/ProgParams/ApFunctions 0:Name=ApFunctions 1:TagName=ApFunctions ChildNodes=55 XMLLength=353048:352980					
	_				
□· HydroConfia (HydroConfia)					
TemplateView (TemplateView)					
- ProgParams					
⊕ ExpFactor					
Location Type (Location Type)					
<del>asterLocation</del>					
TimeSeriesLocation					
SchemaDatabaseLocation					
i HelpFileName					
ApFunctions (ApFunctions)					
ApFunctionConfigs (ApFunctionConfigs)					
⊡ LogFile (LogFile) ⊕ DiPath					
Here Loaded Date Time					
· Layerreys 					
Ap UtilitiesConfig (Ap UtilitiesConfig)					

Figure 4: XML Configuration defined for each Arc Hydro Function under ApFunctions node.

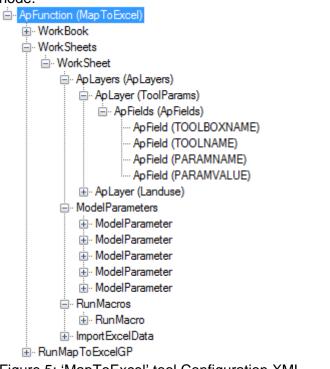


Figure 5: 'MapToExcel' tool Configuration XML. Configuration for 'Map to Excel' tool is shown below. The rules for configuring the spreadsheet for Map to Excel are:

- 1. The tool will only export to a single to file (WorkBook node) at a time.
- 2. Each model can export to separate work sheets (WorkSheets->WorksSheet nodes) in the same file.
- 3. Each worksheet has its own configuration for exporting tables/layers (WorkSheets->WorksSheet->ApLayers nodes).
- 4. Each worksheet has a list of macros that will be run after exporting to Excel (WorkSheets->WorksSheet->RunMacros nodes).

User can edit the xml node by right clicking 'Edit Attributes' or 'Edit text'. User can also copy/paste/delete existing node to add/remove export elements. If you are not familiar with the ApLayer/ApField properties, please consult the additional document on Arc Hydro XML Manager. Typically, users are allowed to edit Name/AliasName and AdditionalParams properties. In the figure below, AdditionalParams is R=4;C=6 which means, the value of the field 'PARAMVALUE' is going to a cell with Row = 4 and Column = 6.

ApFunction (WshParams)	Attributes of ApFie			
#comment	FIELD	VALUE		
≟- ApFunction (MapToExcel) ≟- WorkBook	Name	ParamValue		
	TagName	PARAMVALUE		
Work Sheet	AliasName	ParamValue		
i⊟⊷ ApLayers (ApLayers) i⊟⊷ ApLayer (ToolParams)	Desc	ParamValue		
ApEigles (ApFields)	Туре	4		
- ApField (TOOLBOXNAME)	FieldWidth	100		
ApField (TOOLNAME)	Decimals	0		
···· ApField (PARAMNAME) ····· ApField (PARAMVALUE)	AllowNull	0		
·····Apheid (PANAMVALOE) ⊕·· ApLayer (Landuse)	AdditionalParams	R=4;C=6		
ModelParameters				
i∰. Run Map To ExcelGP				
pFunctionConfigs (ApFunctionConfigs)	ΟΚ			
ogFile (LogFile)				

Figure 6: Editing the configuration XML for Map to Excel.

🔨 Map to Excel	×
Input Excel File	<b>^</b>
C:\Projects\Dashboard\edaw.xlsm	Ξ
	Ŧ
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >:	>

Figure 7: UI for the 'Map to Excel' tool when run as a standalone tool.

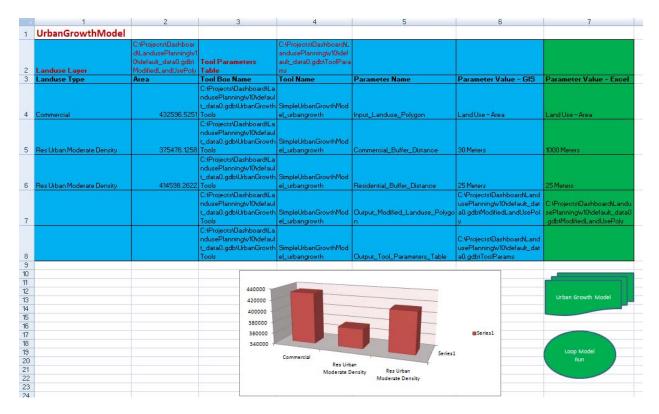


Figure 7: The result of the 'Map to Excel' tool populates values in the Excel file. Light blue area represents the values exported from ArcMap. The green area has updated variable values for running ArcMap models.

Note: Map to Excel tool will execute macros within Excel to refresh dash board components after exporting. Name of the macro can be specified in the configuration file under 'RunMacros' node.

ApFunction (MapToExcel)		
	👰 Edit	
i⊟ • Work Sheet	NedeName:	Value:
i⊞⊶ ApLayers (ApLa i⊞⊶ ModelParamete	- · · ·	UrbanGrowthModel.Macro1
	Apply to child nodes	OK Cancel

Figure 8: Configure macros under 'RunMacros' node.

## 3. Excel to Map

After exporting the model parameters and attributes to Excel, modelers may change input variables to model various scenarios. They may also run analyses, modeling scenarios, etc. within Excel spreadsheet (manual, or pre assigned formula).

The Excel to Map tool allows reading the changed model parameters from a spreadsheet and running the Model from ArcMap. The model names and model parameters values within Excel is specified in the configuration section of 'Map to Excel' tool under 'ModelParameters' node.

• Double-click **GIS Data Exchange** > **Excel to Map**.

The rules for configuring the spreadsheet for 'Excel to Map' are:

- 1. Each worksheet has a list of model parameters for running the model from Excel for 'Excel To Map' tool (WorkSheets->WorksSheet->ModelParameters nodes).
- 2. RunMapToExcelGP node has "True/False" value to switch on/off the running of Map to Excel tool automatically after executing Excel to Map.

– ApFunction (MapToExcel) ⊕ WorkBook ⊖ WorkSheets				
⊡ · WorkSheet	🔮 Edit			
. ApLayers (ApLayers) 	NodeName:	Value:		
. ModelParameter	ModelParameter	R=4;C=7		
. ModelParameter 	Apply to child nodes		OK Canc	

Figure 9: Configure Model Parameters under 'ModelParameters' node.

🔨 Excel to Map		
Input Excel File		
C:\Projects\Dashboard\edaw.xlsm		
OK Cancel Environments Show Help >>		

Figure 10: UI for the 'Excel to Map' tool when run as a standalone tool.

When run from within Excel, input for this tool (name of the excel file) is collected from the model parameter section of the spreadsheet and model is executed. Based on the RunMapToExcelGP node value, 'Map to Excel' tool is executed at the end of model run to export the model results back to Excel.

Note: Set ImportExcelData toTrue to import excel data into Arc Map. The same layer definition (name, row, column) used for Map To Excel tool will be used for sending the data back to GIS.

⊡ · ModelParameters ModelParameter	🔮 Edit		
ModelParameter     ModelParameter     ModelParameter     ModelParameter     ModelParameter	NodeName: ImportExcelData	Value: True	
	Apply to child nodes		OK Cancel
i Run Macro ⊡ Import Excel Data			

Figure 11: Configure ImportExcelData node.

- 'Run Model' Excel Macro: This macro will allow modelers to run 'Excel to Map' GP tool from within Excel Dashboard with updated input parameters. After the execution of the model, this tool will update the excel spreadsheet with new attribute values. User will be able to click on the run button on the dashboard to execute a model (e.g. <u>RUN MODEL 1</u>). This button will have a macro assigned to it to run when clicked (e.g. RunUrbanGrowthModel macro)
- 'Conditional Run' Excel Macro: This macro will run the model 'n' number of times until a condition is satisfied. This condition will be a value of a cell within the dash board (e.g. Run the model until Commercial Area = 20 Km2). This button will call the 'Run Model' macro multiple times until a condition is met.

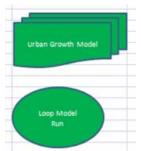


Figure 12: Run model macros within the sheet as graphical objects.